

SACHHOC.COM

**BÀI TẬP TRẮC
NGHIỆM TIẾNG
ANH LỚP 9**

CHƯƠNG TRÌNH MỚI

CÓ ĐÁP ÁN VÀ GIẢI CHI TIẾT

SACHHOC.COM

BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM
TIẾNG ANH LỚP 9
CHƯƠNG TRÌNH MỚI

LOCAL ENVIRONMENT (UNIT 1)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

artisan (n)	/ɑːtɪˈzæn/	thợ làm nghề thủ công	attraction (n)	/əˈtrækʃn/	điểm hấp dẫn
authenticity (n)	/ɔːθenˈtɪsəti/	thật	cast (v)	/kɑːst/	đúc (đồng...)
craft (n)	/krɑːft/	nghề thủ công, kỹ năng làm nghề thủ công	craftsman (n)	/ˈkrɑːftsmən/	thợ làm đồ thủ công
cross (v)	/krɒs/	đan chéo	drumhead (n)	/drʌmhed/	mặt trống
embroider (v)	/ɪmˈbrɔɪdə/	thêu	frame (n)	/freɪm/	khung
handicraft (n)	/ˈhændɪkrɑːft/	sản phẩm thủ công	lacquerware (n)	/ˈlækəweə/	đồ sơn mài
layer (n)	/ˈleɪə/	lớp (lá...)	mould (v)	/məʊld/	đổ khuôn, tạo khuôn
preserve (v)	/prɪˈzɜːv/	bảo vệ, bảo tồn	remind (v)	/rɪˈmaɪnd/	gợi nhớ
sculpture (n)	/ˈskʌlptʃə/	điêu khắc, đồ điêu khắc	set off (ph.v)	/set ɒf/	khởi hành
strip (n)	/striːp/	dải	surface (n)	/ˈsɜːfɪs/	bề mặt
teambuilding (adj)	/tiːm-ˈbɪldɪŋ/	xây dựng đội ngũ	thread (n)	/θred/	sợi
treat (v)	/triːt/	xử lý (chất thải...)	turn up (ph.v)	/tɜːn ʌp/	xuất hiện, đến
weave (v)	/wiːv/	đan (rổ, rá...), dệt (vải...)	workshop (n)	/ˈwɜːkʃɒp/	công xưởng, xưởng

II. Grammar

- Review : Complex sentences (Adverb clauses of result, reasons, concession)
- Phrasal verbs

III. Phonetics: Stress on content words in sentences.

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern:

1. A. famous B. village C. workshop D. bamboo
2. A. business B. experience C. grandparent D. chocolate
3. A. generation B. communicate C. historical D. environment
4. A. embroider B. department C. handicraft D. opinion
5. A. transfer B. publish C. accept D. remind
6. A. attraction B. artisan C. frame D. handicraft
7. A. drumhead B. illustration C. earplug D. drugstore
8. A. strip B. visual C. artistic D. remind
9. A. thread B. treat C. pleasure D. deadline
10. embroider B. preserve C. benefit D. effect

II. Find the word which has a different position of the main stress in each line:

1. A. craftman B. layer C. sculpture D. preserve
2. A. lacquerware B. absolute C. pollution D. permanent
3. A. memorable B. experience C. historical D. production
4. pottery B. souvenir C. conical D. various
5. authenticity B. electricity C. traditional D. uncontrollably

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences:

1. There are a lot of silk _____ such as carves, ties and dresses in our shop.	PRODUCE
2. Bat Trang is one of the most famous _____ craft villages in Hanoi.	TRADITION
3. We should read this leaflet to see what _____ are organized during the festival.	ACT
4. They showed me a marble sculpture which was _____ made by hand.	SKILL
5. Last week we had a _____ trip to an ancient village on the outskirts of Hanoi.	MEMORY
6. Obviously, our handicrafts are in _____ with those of other villages.	COMPETE
7. Do you know that _____ have to follow 15 stages to make a conical hat.	ART
8. My grandfather has devoted himself to many _____ events in our community.	CULTURE
9. You should spend at least one week to visit the tourist _____ in this city.	ATTRACT
10. We are impressed by a wide _____ of lacquerwares in the showroom.	VARY

IV. Complete the sentences with suitable subordinators from the box :

although	as soon as	because	before	so that	while
----------	------------	---------	--------	---------	-------

1. The children are very excited _____ they are going to visit a craft village this

weekend.

2. We will tell Alice about the trip _____ we meet her.
3. _____ it rained a lot, they enjoyed their holiday.
4. I bought a new pair of glasses _____ I can see better.
5. _____ I go out tonight, I will have to finish this essay.
6. Phong burnt his hand _____ he was cooking dinner.
7. Laura always gets up early every morning _____ she's not late for her work.
8. Mr. Harrison seems to have a lot of money _____ he lives in a luxurious house.
9. _____ I was waiting for the bus, I saw some foreign tourists.
10. They didn't win the game _____ they played very well.

V. Make a complex sentence from each pair of sentences. Use the subordinator provided and make any necessary changes :

1. Their son is allergic to animals. They decided to get a cat. (though)
→ _____
2. He will stay in England for two months more. He can perfect his English. (in order that)
→ _____
3. There is nothing to eat. We have to go shopping today. (as).
→ _____
4. I go to Hue next week. I will stay with my aunt and uncle. (when)
→ _____
5. Mai could have good marks. She studied hard for the exam. (so that)
→ _____
6. We need an umbrella. It is raining heavily outside. (since)
→ _____
7. Nick will visit some craft villages. He finishes the Vietnamese course. (after)
→ _____
8. We decided to go for a walk in the park. It was very cold out. (although)
→ _____
9. The tourists wanted to buy some silk. They went to Van Phuc village. (because)
→ _____
10. They won't buy the new car. They save enough money. (until)
→ _____
11. Many craft families stopped their business. There is the economic crisis in the world. (because)
→ _____
12. Dong Ho paintings are simple. These pictures reflect a typical characteristic of Vietnamese labourers. (although).
→ _____
13. Three villages were chosen for the pilot project. The Asia Foundation had worked with local authorities. (after).
→ _____
14. We do not have many handicraft products that are well-known abroad. There are thousands of craft trades nationwide. (though)
→ _____
15. The craft village must also meet environmental requirements. It wants to develop craft village tourism. (so that)
→ _____
16. Vietnam began integrating into the international economy a few decades ago. Production in craft villages developed strongly, meeting demand for domestic decoration, and construction. (when)

- _____
17. At the age of over 80, the artisan is instructing the craft to his grandchildren. He wants them to preserve this ancient craft. (so that)
- _____
18. The workers have taken several steps to whiten the palm leaves. They sew together the leaves and the rings. (after)
- _____
19. The conical hat has several useful functions. It protects the wearer's head and face from sunlight or rain, and it also works as a handy fan on hot summer days. (because)
- _____ 20.
- Local people in Thanh Ha pottery village near Hoi An continue following their craft. There isn't enough support for maintaining the old traditions and skills. (although)
- _____

VI. Complete each of the following sentences using the correct form of a phrasal verb from the box :

close down	come back	deal with	get up	keep up with
live on	look through	pass down	set off	turn down

- My sister is an early bird. She _____ at 7 o'clock everyday of the week.
- We will _____ for Tay Ho village at 9 o'clock and arrive at 10 o'clock.
- When I was a student, I _____ small allowances from my parents.
- The government must now _____ the preservation of traditional craft villages.
- The banks have _____ a lot of branches in villages over the last few years.
- Many foreign tourists decided to _____ to Viet Nam for another holiday.
- They offered her a trip to Europe but she _____ it _____.
- He has _____ the report and found nothing interesting.
- Phong walks too fast and it's really hard to _____ him.
- These traditional stories have been _____ from parents to children over many generations.

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each blank :

Many visitors come to Hartbridge to see the wonderful art (1) _____ and museums, the beautiful buildings and the fantastic parks. Few people go outside the city, and so they miss out on (2) _____ the scenery and the fascinating history of this beautiful area. This brochure will tell you what you can see if you (3) _____ a short bus ride out of the city.

The beautiful village of Tatterbridge was (4) _____ to the children's writer Jane Potter, whose stories of Benjamin Bear (5) _____ loved by adults and children around the world. Jane Potter's home is now a museum and tea shop, and is well (6) _____ a visit just for its wonderful gardens. It also has a gift shop where you can buy (7) _____ and books. Tatterbridge has a number of interesting shops (8) _____ an excellent cake shop, and 'Wendy's Giftshop' where you can find lots of unusual gifts made (9) _____ hand by local artists. Lovers of Jane Potter's books should also walk to the Green Valley woods, which have not changed since Jane Potter (10) _____ her stories there one hundred years ago.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A workshops | B. galleries | C. restaurants | D. stations |
| 2. A. understanding | B. questioning | C. welcoming | D. experiencing |
| 3. A. bring | B. take | C. drive | D. sail |
| 4. A. home | B. school | C. shop | D. cottage |
| 5. A. be | B. have | C. are | D. been |
| 6. A. excited | B. worth | C. value | D. know |

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 7. A. souvenirs | B. materials | C. costumes | D. vegetables |
| 8. A. purchasing | B. advertising | C. preserving | D. including |
| 9. A. at | B. with | C. by | D. in |
| 10. A. wrote | B. designed | C. moulded | D. carved |

VIII. Read the passage and decide whether the following statements are true (T), or false (F):

Bau Truc pottery items are made from clay from the Quao River mixed with sand. Clay is collected from the river only once a year, each lasting for half a month. Clay is taken more or less depending on the ability of each person. In the clay collecting season, local people try to take as much clay as they can to store, for use in an entire year.

Currently, people in Bau Truc pottery village still make pottery items in the traditional way. They do not use the wheel but the craftsmen have to turn around the products. The potters shape their products by their skillful hands and feet around a pole-round pillar, rather than on one wheel. From this step, silky clay block initially gradually forms a smooth rounded hollow block, then the formation of flower vases, or water pots.

Bau Truc's craftsmen use wet cloths to make the product surface smooth. These items are decorated with seashells, snails or hand-made paintings featuring the daily life of Bau Truc's people.

	T	F
1. Clay can be collected from the Quao River all year round.		
2. Bau Truc pottery is famous because people only use fine clay to make their products.		
3. People still make the pottery in the traditional way.		
4. Craftsmen shape the pottery items only with their hands and feet.		
5. The pots nowadays are shaped on the potter's wheel.		
6. Craftsmen use simple ways to make the product surface smooth.		
7. The craftsmen's skills can make the blocks of clay become lively and useful.		
8. The designs of Bau Truc pottery reflect the life of local people.		

IX. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence :

- I arrive on time in spite of the bad traffic.
→ Although _____ 2.
David had good relationship with most of his colleagues.
- David gets _____
- Lan was ill, so she didn't go to Dong Ho village with her friends.
→ Because _____
- The children are eager to visit Hue next week.
→ The children are looking _____
- I'll give you a call immediately after I have finished my work.
→ As soon as _____

X. Alex is writing an email to Mai to introduce some of the places of interest in his hometown, Newquay. Use the words/ phrases given to complete his email. Add more words, if necessary

- Newquay : small town/ Atlantic coast/ south/ England//
- 1st suggestionsurfing/ Fistral Beach//. One/ best place/ surf/ UK//. Some good surf school/ learn/ surf//. Surfing/ friend/ every weekend//.

- [illegible]

Dear Susan,

- ## KEY UNIT 1

1. A. famous	B. village	C. workshop	D. bamboo
2. A. business	B. experience	C. grandparent	D. chocolate
3. A. generation	B. communicate	C. historical	D. environment
4. A. embroider	B. department	C. handicraft	D. opinion
5. A. transfer	B. publish	C. accept	D. remind
6. A. attraction	B. artisan	C. frame	D. handicraft
7. A. drumhead	B. illustration	C. earplug	D. drugstore
8. A. strip	B. visual	C. artistic	D. remind
9. A. thread	B. treat	C. pleasure	D. deadline
10. embroider	B. preserve	C. benefit	D. effect

II. Find the word which has a different position of the main stress in each line:

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. craftman | B. layer | C. sculpture | D. preserve |
| 2. A. lacquerware | B. absolute | C. pollution | D. permanent |
| 3. A. memorable | B. experience | C. historical | D. production |
| 4. pottery | B. souvenir | C. conical | D. various |
| 5. authenticity | B. electricity | C. traditional | D. uncontrollably |

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences:

1. There are a lot of silk _____ such as carves, ties and dresses in our shop.	PRODUCE → products
2. Bat Trang is one of the most famous _____ craft villages in Hanoi.	TRADITION → traditional
3. We should read this leaflet to see what _____ are organized during the festival.	ACT → activities
4. They showed me a marble sculpture which was _____ made by hand.	SKILL → skillfully
5. Last week we had a _____ trip to an ancient village on the outskirts of Hanoi.	MEMORY → memorable
6. Obviously, our handicrafts are in _____ with those of other villages.	COMPETE → competition
7. Do you know that _____ have to follow 15 stages to make a conical hat.	ART → artisans
8. My grandfather has devoted himself to many _____ events in our community.	CULTURE → cultural
9. You should spend at least one week to visit the tourist _____ in this city.	ATTRACT → attractions
10. We are impressed by a wide _____ of lacquerwares in the showroom.	VARY → variety

IV. Complete the sentences with suitable subordinators from the box :

although (3,10)	as soon as (2)	because (1,8)	before (5)	so that (4,7)
while (6,9)				

- The children are very excited _____ they are going to visit a craft village this weekend.
- We will tell Alice about the trip _____ we meet her.
- _____ it rained a lot, they enjoyed their holiday.
- I bought a new pair of glasses _____ I can see better.
- _____ I go out tonight, I will have to finish this essay.
- Phong burnt his hand _____ he was cooking dinner.
- Laura always gets up early every morning _____ she's not late for her work.
- Mr. Harrison seems to have a lot of money _____ he lives in a luxurious house.
- _____ I was waiting for the bus, I saw some foreign tourists.
- They didn't win the game _____ they played very well.

V. Make a complex sentence from each pair of sentences. Use the subordinator provided and make any necessary changes :

1. Their son is allergic to animals. They decided to get a cat. (though) → They decided to get a cat though their son is allergic to animals.
2. He will stay in England for two months more. He can perfect his English. (in order that) → He will stay in England for two months more so that he can perfect his English.
3. There is nothing to eat. We have to go shopping today. (as). → We have to go shopping today as there is nothing to eat.
- 4 I go to Hue next week. I will stay with my aunt and uncle. (when) → When I go to Hue next week, I will stay with my aunt and uncle.
5. Mai could have good marks. She studied hard for the exam. (so that) → Mai studied hard for the exam so that she could have good marks.
6. We need an umbrella. It is raining heavily outside. (since) → We need an umbrella since it is raining heavily outside.
7. Nick will visit some craft villages. He finishes the Vietnamese course. (after) → Nick will visit some craft villages after he finishes the Vietnamese course.
8. We decided to go for a walk in the park. It was very cold out. (although) → Even though it was very cold out, we decided to go for a walk in the park.
9. The tourists wanted to buy some silk. They went to Van Phuc village. (because) → The tourists went to Van Phuc village because they wanted to buy some silk.
10. They won't buy the new car. They save enough money. (until) → They won't buy the new car until they save enough money.
11. Many craft families stopped their business. There is the economic crisis in the world. (because) → Many craft families stopped their business because there is the economic crisis in the world
12. Dong Ho paintings are simple. These pictures reflect a typical characteristic of Vietnamese labourers. (although). → Although Dong Ho paintings are simple, these pictures reflect a typical characteristic of Vietnamese labourers.
13. Three villages were chosen for the pilot project. The Asia Foundation had worked with local authorities. (after). → Three villages were chosen for the pilot project after the Asia Foundation had worked with local authorities.
14. We do not have many handicraft products that are well-known abroad. There are thousands of craft trades nationwide. (though) We do not have many handicraft products that are well-known abroad though there are thousands of craft trades nationwide
15. The craft village must also meet environmental requirements. It wants to develop craft village tourism. (so that) → The craft village must also meet environmental requirements so that it can develop craft village tourism
16. Vietnam began integrating into the international economy a few decades ago. Production in craft villages developed strongly, meeting demand for domestic decoration, and construction. (when) → When Vietnam began integrating into the international economy a few decades ago, production in craft villages developed strongly, meeting demand for domestic decoration, and construction.
17. At the age of over 80, the artisan is instructing the craft to his grandchildren. He wants them to preserve this ancient craft. (so that) → At the age of over 80, the artisan is instructing the craft to his grandchildren so that they can preserve this ancient craft
18. The workers have taken several steps to whiten the palm leaves. They sew together the leaves and the rings. (after) → After the workers have taken several steps to whiten the palm leaves, they sew together the leaves and the rings.
19. The conical hat has several useful functions. It protects the wearer's head and face from sunlight or rain, and it also works as a handy fan on hot summer days. (because) → The conical hat has several useful functions because it protects the wearer's head and face from sunlight or rain, and it also works as a handy fan on hot summer days

20. Local people in Thanh Ha pottery village near Hoi An continue following their craft. There isn't enough support for maintaining the old traditions and skills. (although)
 → Local people in Thanh Ha pottery village near Hoi An continue following their craft although there isn't enough support for maintaining the old traditions and skills.

VI. Complete each of the following sentences using the correct form of a phrasal verb from the box :

close down	come back	deal with	get up	keep up with
live on	look through	pass down	set off	turn down

- My sister is an early bird. She _____ at 7 o'clock everyday of the week. (**gets up**)
- We will _____ for Tay Ho village at 9 o'clock and arrive at 10 o'clock. (**set off**)
- When I was a student, I _____ small allowances from my parents. (**lived on**)
- The government must now _____ the preservation of traditional craft villages. (**deal with**)
- The banks have _____ a lot of branches in villages over the last few years. (**closed down**)
- Many foreign tourists decided to _____ to Viet Nam for another holiday. (**come back**)
- They offered her a trip to Europe but she _____ it _____. (**turned – down**)
- He has _____ the report and found nothing interesting. (**looked through**)
- Phong walks too fast and it's really hard to _____ him. (**keep up with**)
- These traditional stories have been _____ from parents to children over many generations. (**passed down**)

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each blank :

Many visitors come to Hartbridge to see the wonderful art (1) _____ and museums, the beautiful buildings and the fantastic parks. Few people go outside the city, and so they miss out on (2) _____ the scenery and the fascinating history of this beautiful area. This brochure will tell you what you can see if you (3) _____ a short bus ride out of the city.

The beautiful village of Tatterbridge was (4) _____ to the children's writer Jane Potter, whose stories of Benjamin Bear (5) _____ loved by adults and children around the world. Jane Potter's home is now a museum and tea shop, and is well (6) _____ a visit just for its wonderful gardens. It also has a gift shop where you can buy (7) _____ and books. Tatterbridge has a number of interesting shops (8) _____ an excellent cake shop, and 'Wendy's Giftshop' where you can find lots of unusual gifts made (9) _____ hand by local artists. Lovers of Jane Potter's books should also walk to the Green Valley woods, which have not changed since Jane Potter (10) _____ her stories there one hundred years ago.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|----------------|------------------------|
| 1. A workshops | B. galleries | C. restaurants | D. stations |
| 2. A. understanding | B. questioning | C. welcoming | D. experiencing |
| 3. A. bring | B. take | C. drive | D. sail |
| 4. A. home | B. school | C. shop | D. cottage |
| 5. A. be | B. have | C. are | D. been |
| 6. A. excited | B. worth | C. value | D. know |
| 7. A. souvenirs | B. materials | C. costumes | D. vegetables |
| 8. A. purchasing | B. advertising | C. preserving | D. including |
| 9. A. at | B. with | C. by | D. in |
| 10. A. wrote | B. designed | C. moulded | D. carved |

VIII. Read the passage and decide whether the following statements are true (T), or false (F):

Bau Truc pottery items are made from clay from the Quao River mixed with sand. Clay is collected from the river only once a year, each lasting for half a month. Clay is taken more or less depending on the ability of each person. In the clay collecting season, local people try to take as much clay as they can to store, for use in an entire year.

Currently, people in Bau Truc pottery village still make pottery items in the traditional way. They do not use the wheel but the craftsmen have to turn around the products. The potters shape their products by their skillful hands and feet around a pole-round pillar, rather than on one wheel. From this step, silky clay block initially gradually forms a smooth rounded hollow block, then the formation of flower vases, or water pots.

Bau Truc's craftsmen use wet cloths to make the product surface smooth. These items are decorated with seashells, snails or hand-made paintings featuring the daily life of Bau Truc's people.

	T	F
1. Clay can be collected from the Quao River all year round.		F
2. Bau Truc pottery is famous because people only use fine clay to make their products.		F
3. People still make the pottery in the traditional way.	T	
4. Craftsmen shape the pottery items only with their hands and feet.		F
5. The pots nowadays are shaped on the potter's wheel.		F
6. Craftsmen use simple ways to make the product surface smooth.	T	
7. The craftsmen's skills can make the blocks of clay become lively and useful.	T	
8. The designs of Bau Truc pottery reflect the life of local people.	T	

IX. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence :

- I arrive on time in spite of the bad traffic.
→ Although the traffic was bad, I arrived on time.
- David had good relationship with most of his colleagues.
→ David gets on well with most of his colleagues.
- Lan was ill, so she didn't go to Dong Ho village with her friends.
→ Because Lan was ill, she didn't go to Dong Ho village with her friends.
- The children are eager to visit Hue next week.
→ The children are looking forward to visiting Hue next week.
- I'll give you a call immediately after I have finished my work. →
As soon as I have finished my work, I'll give you a call.

X. Choose the correct option (A, B, C or D) :

- She presented me with a new blanket on which she _____ some beautiful flowers.
A. knitted **B. embroidered** C. moulded D. carved
- She is very good at knitting. She _____ herself this sweater. It looks very nice.
A. knit B. knits C. is knitting **D. knitted**
- All the main parts of this machine are _____ of steel.
A. **made** B. done C. woven D. given
- My parents once took me to Bat Trang village. I could make my own _____ there. I really enjoyed it.
A. **pottery** B. lacquer C. painting. D. sculpture
- Have you ever _____ to Tay Ho village in Hue ? It's the place where people make the famous *Bai tho* conical hat.
A. go B. went C. gone **D. been**
- _____ he spent a lot of money to redecorate his shop, he cannot make any more profit.

- A. In order to **B. Although** C. So that D. Because of
7. This company has gone bankrupt. Do you know who will _____ ?
- A. take care of it B. look after it
- C. take it over** D. turn it up
8. She's just received a large order from Japan. but she is afraid of not finishing her order on time _____ her workshop lacks good artisans.
- A. **because** B. in order to C. although D. so that
9. The people in this village are trying to change their designs and quality of their handicrafts _____ their products can be exported to many countries in the world.
- A. **so that** B. in order to C. because D. though
10. The people in my village cannot earn enough money for their daily life. They can't _____ this traditional craft. They have to find other jobs.
- A. help out **B. live on** C. work on D. set up

XI. Alex is writing an email to Mai to introduce some of the places of interest in his hometown, Newquay. Use the words/ phrases given to complete his email. Add more words, if necessary

- Newquay : small town/ Atlantic coast/ south/ England//
- 1st suggestionsurfing/ Fistral Beach//. One/ best place/ surf/ UK//. Some good surf school/ learn/ surf//. Surfing/ friend/ every weekend//.
- If like water sports : kayaking/ water-skiing/ coasteering//. Coasteering/ different/ because/ it/ rock climbing/ jumping/ sea/ swimming/ same activity//. Sound/ dangerous/ not worry/ as/ always/ go/ special instructor//.
- If/ like/ animals : visit Blue Reef Aquarium/ see/ different fish/ even shark//. Can/ horse riding / or/ visit/ Newquay Zoo//.

Dear Mai,

It's great to know that you are coming to Newquay. It's a small town on the Atlantic coast in the south of England.

There are lots of interesting places and activities here. The first thing I suggest is surfing at Fistral Beach. It is one of the best places to surf in the UK. There are some good surf schools where you can learn how to surf. I go surfing with my friends every weekend here.

If you like water sports, you can go kayaking, water-skiing or coasteering. Coasteering is different because it is rock climbing, jumping into the sea and swimming in the same activity. It sounds dangerous, but don't worry as always go with a special instructor.

If you like animals you can also visit the Blue Reef Aquarium and see many different fish and even sharks. You can also go horse riding on the beach or visit Newquay Zoo.

There are lots of other attractions too like mini golf and bowling. When you come to my town, I hope I'll be able to show you some of these places.

Best wishes,

Alex

XII. Write an email to your pen friend about a trip to craft villages around Hoi An, using the words or phrases below to make complete sentences. Add more words, if necessary.

Dear Susan,

1. It/ take/ you/ only 30 minutes/ motorbike/go/ Van Phuc silk village/ centre/ Ha Noi.

→ _____

2. The village/ much well-known/ traditional sericulture/ weaving/ silk products.

→ _____

3. Most visitors/ go/ observe/ skillful workers/ produce/ goods/ listen/ local stories.

→ _____

4. If/ you/ intend/ have/ silk/ pair/ formal clothes/ just select/ suitable materials/ and/ professional tailors here/ bring/ satisfaction.

→ _____

5. You buy silk clothes made of silk/ presents/ available/ village/ your choice.

→ _____

Look forward to seeing you soon.

Best wishes,

Dear Susan,

1. It takes you only 30 minutes by motorbike to go to Van Phuc silk village from the centre of Hanoi.
 2. The village has been much well known for its traditional sericulture, weaving, and silk products.
 3. Most visitors can go around to observe skillful workers producing goods, listening to local stories.
 4. If you intend to have a silk pair of formal clothes, just select your suitable materials and professional tailors here will bring you satisfaction.
 5. You can buy silk and clothes made of silk as presents available around in the village for your choice.
- Look forward to seeing you soon!
Best wishes

English 9 - CITY LIFE (UNIT 2)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

Get over	/get 'əʊvə(r)/	Vượt qua, khỏi bệnh Dấn ai đi	Urban (adj)	/'ɜ:(r)bən/	Thuộc đô thị
Show sb around	/ʃəʊ ə'raʊnd /	tham quan Chật kín	Urbanization (n)	/,ɜ:(r)bənəɪ'zeɪʃ(ə)n/	Sự thành thị hóa
Packed with	/pækt wɪð /		Urbanise (v)	/'ɜ:(r)bənəɪzɪd/	Đô thị hóa Sự đô thị hóa
			Urban sprawl (n)	/sprɔ:əl/	
Jet lag (n)	/'dʒet,læg/	Hội chứng lệch múi giờ (thường do đi máy bay)	Forbid (v)	/fə'brɪd/	Ngăn cấm Bị cấm cản
Jet-lagged (adj)	/'dʒet,lægd/		Forbidden (adj)		
Attractions (n)	/ə'trækʃ(ə)n/	Địa điểm thu hút khách du lịch Thu hút	Neighbor (n)	/'neɪbə(r)/	Người hàng xóm Vùng lân cận
Attractive (Adj)	/ə'træktɪv/		Neighborhood (n)	/'neɪbə(r),hʊd/	
Attractively (adv)	/ə'træktɪvli/				
Convenient (adj)	/kən'vi:niənt/	Tiện lợi	Skyscraper (n)	/'skaɪ,skreɪpə(r)/	Nhà cao chọc trời
Convenience (n)	/kən'vi:niəns/	Sự thuận tiện			
Reliable (adj)	/rɪ'laɪəb(ə)l/	Đáng tin cậy	Conduct (v)	/kən'dʌkt/	Thực hiện
Reliability (n)	/rɪ,laɪə'bɪlɪti/	Sự đáng tin cậy			

<i>Metropolitan (a)</i> <i>Metropolis (n)</i>	<i>/ˌmetrəˈpɒlɪt(ə)n/</i> <i>/məˈtrɒpəlɪs/</i>	<i>Thuộc thủ đô</i> <i>Thủ đô, thủ ohur</i> <i>chính</i>	Determine (v) Determination (n)	<i>/dɪˈtɜː(r)mɪn/</i> <i>/dɪ,tɜː(r)mɪˈneɪʃ(ə)n/</i>	Quyết định Sự quyết định
<i>Variety (n)</i> <i>Various (adj)</i> <i>Varied (adj)</i>	<i>/vəˈraɪəti/</i> <i>/ˈveəriəs/</i> <i>/ˈveərɪd/</i>	Sự đa dạng Khác nhau Đa dạng	<i>Indicate (v)</i> <i>Indicator (n)</i>	<i>/ˈɪndɪkeɪt/</i> <i>/ˈɪndɪˌkeɪtə(r)/</i>	Biểu thị Chỉ số
<i>Wander (v)</i>	<i>/ˈwɒndə(r)/</i>	Đi lang thang	<i>Conflict (n)</i>	<i>/ˈkɒnflɪkt/</i>	Xung đột
<i>Oceania (n)</i> <i>Oceanic (adj)</i>	<i>/ˌəʊsiˈɑːniə/</i> <i>/ˌəʊʃiˈænik/</i>	Châu Đại Dương Thuộc đại dương	<i>Asset (n)</i>	<i>/ˈæset/</i>	Tài sản
<i>Afford (v)</i> <i>Affordable (adj)</i>	<i>/əˈfɔː(r)d/</i> <i>/əˈfɔː(r)dəb(ə)l/</i>	Có đủ khả năng Giá cả phải chăng	<i>Index (n)</i>	<i>/ˈɪndeks/</i>	Chỉ số
<i>Exhibit (v)</i> <i>Exhibition (n)</i>	<i>/ɪɡˈzɪbɪt/</i> <i>/ˌeksɪˈbɪʃ(ə)n/</i>	Trung bày Buổi triển lãm	<i>Religion (n)</i> <i>Religious (adj)</i>	<i>/rɪˈlɪdʒ(ə)n/</i> <i>/rəˈlɪdʒəs/</i>	Tôn giáo Thuộc tôn giáo
<i>Metro (n)</i>	<i>/ˈmetrəʊ/</i>	Tàu điện ngầm	<i>Dweller (n)</i>	<i>/ˈdwelə(r)/</i>	Cư dân

II. Grammar:

- Review: Comparison of adjectives and adverbs

- Phrasal verbs

B. PRONUNCIATION:

Stress on pronouns in sentences

C. EXERCISES

I. Choose the options whose stress pattern is different from others’.

1. A. urban B. asset C. metro D. conduct
2. A. factor B. medium C. conflict D. downtown
3. A. fabulous B. reliable C. variety D. forbidden
4. A. negative B. indicator C. determine D. skyscraper
5. A. metropolitan B. affordable C. Oceania D. multicultural
6. A. conduct B. ancient C. drawback D. feature
7. A. determine B. pagoda C. fabulous D. convenient
8. A. intelligence B. facility C. development D. education
9. A. metropolitan B. university C. organization D. multicultural
10. A. fascinate B. expensive C. restaurant D. difference
11. A. populous B. determine C. forbidden D. delicious
12. A. metropolitan B. fascinating C. multicultural D. recreational
13. A. skyscraper B. convenience C. resident D. vehicle
14. A. affordable B. environment C. variety D. indicator

II. Choose the options whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the rest.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. conduct | B. difficult | C. struck | D. fun |
| 2. A. metropolitan | B. polluted | C. forbidden | D. affordable |
| 3. A. feature | B. culture | C. tradition | D. statue |
| 4. A. fabulous | B. packed | C. asset | D. canal |
| 5. A. metro | B. ocean | C. cosmopolitan | D. local |
| 6. A. delicious | B. facility | C. city | D. place |

III. Choose the best answer

- Osaka has become one of the “livable” cities in Asia.
A. more B. better C. much D. most
- London is one of the largest cities in the world but its populations is a lot than Tokyo.
A. small B. few C. smaller D. fewer
- London is probably most famous for its museums, galleries, palaces, and other sights, but it also includes a range of peoples, cultures and religions than many other places.
A. greater B. big C. wide D. wider
- Ha Noi city now is than it was 10 years ago.
A. as large B. more large C. much larger D. the largest
- This river now is much less than before. People are aware of the environment and they try to keep the river clean.
A. polluted B. pollutes C. polluting D. pollution
- When we were in Da Nang, we spent a lot of time around and looking at the ancient temples, bridges and houses.
A. wander B. wandering C. wandered D. wanders
- On children festival, the zoo is always with people, mainly children.
A. packed B. had C. contained D. scored
- You should take your shoes..... when you go into the temples.
A. up B. in C. off D. on
- When the doctor came in, he went..... all my test results and gave me a prescription.
A. out B. over C. in D. of
- A close friendship has gradually grown between them. They help each other in their daily life.
A. in B. out C. of D. up
- It is considered that life in a city is wonderful and
A. funny B. boring C. enjoyable D. helpful
- You’ll have opportunities to widen your global horizons while living in this cultural capital city.
A. unlimited B. comfortable C. cheerful D. populous
- Dubai’s Palm Islands in the blue ocean is the of a good and sunny life.
A. indicator B. view C. signal D. sign
- This place is so with the non-stop flow of customers to come and enjoy Pho.
A. delicious B. convenient C. popular D. exciting

15. Visitors can take a free boat from Manhattan to Staten Island for a great of the Statue of Liberty and the Manhattan skyline.
A. view B. sight C. scene D. landscape
16. Ha Noi also offers a nightlife as exciting as in Ho Chi Minh City.
A. it B. which C. what D. that
17. When you want to relax, you'll have one of the world's.....cities at your feet, with more than 40% green space and open water to enjoy.
A. greener B. greenest C. mostly green D. green mostly
18. Let me know when you come to Ha Noi and I'll
A. take you out B. bring you around C. cheer you up D. show you round
19. We expected her at nine but she finally at eleven.
A. turned up B. turned out C. came over D. grew up
20. Ann is taking extra lessons to what she missed while she was sick. A. take back B. get on well with C. keep up with D. look forward to
21. The architects got inspired to use the lotus flower in the design for the
A. city B. skyline C. skyscraper D. downtown
22. Villagers are more kind, friendly, and warm-hearted than city
A. dwellers B. foreigners C. beginners D. movers
23. You can see the of the suburbs in Ho Chi Minh City with many apartment buildings, supermarkets, shopping centres, and schools.
A. urban area B. convenience C. urban sprawl D. living condition
24. Dong Khoi street is the main shopping street in the of downtown in Ho Chi Minh City.
A. mind B. heart C. head D. spot
25. Opened in 1937, the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco still ranks among the top 10 bridge spans in the world.
A. long B. longer C. mostly long D. longest
26. No city in America has monuments and museums into one area as Washington D.C.
A. as much B. such many C. as many D. a few
27. The new student was very shy at the beginning, but then he Well with everyone.
A. got on B. went on C. got over D. cheered up
28. The police neverall hope of finding the lost child.
A. stops B. think over C. grow up D. give up
29. He'll be very upset if his employerhis offer.
A. pulls down B. finds out C. turns off D. turns down
30. It's time to say goodbye, but I'mmeeting you all again soon.
A. looking forward to B. getting on with C. keep up with D. put up with

IV. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentence.

1. I am going to visit Da Nang so can you tell me what the greatest in Da Nang are? (ATTRACT)
2. Don't worry about your travelling because the public transport here is convenient and (RELY)
3. Sydney is a metropolitan and city so you have a great variety of things and foods from different countries. (MULTICULTURE)
4. My aunt lives in one of the most parts in Paris. She is a well-known fashion designer there. (FASHION)
5. The outdoor food markets in Singapore are fun and so when you go there you should try some food there. (AFFORD)

V. Complete each of the following sentences with comparatives and superlatives.

1. I think this is (noisy) part of the city.
2. This place was (dangerous) than we thought.
3. Could you show me the way to (near) bus stop.
4. The trip to Ho Chi Minh City was (interesting) for us.
5. This is (good) food I've ever eaten in this country.
6. David's new haircut is (trendy) than the previous one.
7. The building looks much (nice) in green than the previous white.
8. I had to drive my car along (narrow) road in the region.
9. Quan's house is (far) from the city centre than my house.
10. In my opinion, living in the city is (hard) than living in the country.

VI. Choose the best option A, B, C, or D to fill in each blank.

Brighton is a city (1) the south of England. It's got a population of (2) 160,000 and its location has (3) it a popular destination for tourists.

Brighton is 85km from London. It's about an hour on the train. It (4) over 8.5 million visitors annually and is the most popular seaside destination in the UK for overseas tourists.

I like Brighton because it's a (5) place and it's very pretty. There are some really old buildings and it's got some nice parks. For tourists, there are a (6) interesting shopping areas, good restaurants, large cultural, music and arts scene. Brighton is home (7) many independent record labels such as FatCat Records and Memorials of Distinction. Brighton (8) several railway stations, many bus routes, coach services and taxis. In spring and summer, thousands of students from all over Europe gather (9) language courses at many language schools here.

Every time I come here, my favourite places are the beach and the aquarium. For me, Brighton is one of (10) beautiful cities in the world.

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. in | B. on | C. of | D. up |
| 2. A. which | B. about | C. approximate | D. near |
| 3. A. turned | B. started | C. made | D. converted |

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 4. A. takes | B. calls | C. invites | D. attracts |
| 5. A. interested | B. friendly | C. friend | D. beautifully |
| 6. A. many | B. lots of | C. lot of | D. much |
| 7. A. to | B. of | C. in | D. on |
| 8. A. has | B. is | C. makes | D. carries |
| 9. A. attend | B. to attend | C. attending | D. attended |
| 10. A. best | B. most | C. more | D. the most |

VII. Choose the best option to fill in each blank in the following passage.

Unlike life in the countryside which is often considered to be simple and traditional, life in the city is modern and complicated. People, from different regions, move to the cities in the hope of having a better life for them and their children. The inhabitants in city work as secretaries, businessmen, teachers, government workers, factory workers and even street vendors or construction workers.

The high cost of living requires city dwellers, especially someone with low income, to work harder or to take a part-time job. For many people, an ordinary day starts as usual by getting up in the early morning to do exercise in public parks, preparing for a full day of working and studying, then travelling along crowded boulevards or narrow streets filled with motor scooters and returning home after a busy day. They usually live in large houses, or high-rise apartment blocks or even in a small rental room equipped with modern facilities, like the Internet, telephone, television, and so on. Industrialization and modernization as well as global integration have big **impact** on lifestyle in the cities. The most noticeable impact is the Western style of clothes. The “ao dai” – Vietnamese traditional clothes are no longer regularly worn in Vietnamese women’s daily life. Instead, jeans, T-shirts and fashionable clothes are widely preferred.

1. The most important reason why people move to the city is that.....

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| A. to look for a complicate life | B. to take part-time jobs |
| C. to have busy days | D. to look for a better life |

2. According to the passage, the city life can offer city dwellers all of the following things EXCEPT

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. the Internet | B. friendly communication with neighbors |
| C. a variety of jobs in different fields | D. modern facilities |

3. We can infer from the passage that

- A. there is a big gap between the rich and the poor in the city.
- B. people do morning exercise in public parks because they have much free time
- C. people leave the countryside because life there is simple.
- D. most of the urban dwellers have low income.

4. Industrialization and modernization may lead to A.

the fact that women no longer wear *ao dai*.

- B. the disappearance of Western-styled clothes.
- C. some changes in lifestyles.
- D. global integration.

5. The word **impact** in paragraph 2 is closet in meaning to

- A. force B. action C. situation D. effect

VIII. Complete each sentence so it means the same as the sentence above.

1. Many people think there is no city in Viet Nam that is cleaner than Da Nang city.

Many people think

2. I found the trip to the craft village quite interesting.

I felt quite

3. My father says the place in which we are living is the noisiest one in Ha Noi.

My father says that no

4. He hasn't changed much since I last met him in 2000.

He is the same

5. I have never eaten a more delicious food than this one.

This food

IX. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. thanks/ so/ much/ showing/ me/ around/ city/ today/ ./

1.
...

2. public/ transport/ in/ Da Nang city/ more/ convenient/ reliable/ than/ any/ other/ cities/ Viet Nam/ ./

2.

3. Sydney/ five/ big/ universities/ and/ some/ smaller/ ones/ ./

3.

4. The Quoc Tu Giam/ considered/ first/ oldest/ university/ of/ Viet Nam/. It/ established/ 1076/ ./

4.

5. Bat Trang/ lying/ on/ Red River/ bank/ about/ 13km/ southeast/ Ha Noi/ is/ well-known/ craft/ village/ ./

5.

6. last/ week/ my friend/ went/ Hue/ / / he/ spent/ lot/ time/ wandering/ around/ and/ looking/ ancient/ temples/ palaces/ houses/ there/ ./

6.

X. Fill in each blank with a suitable word from the box

multicultural	problems	cities	affordable	wandering
attractions	vehicles	convenient	destination	drawbacks

[illegible]

KEY EXERCISES

I. Choose the options whose stress pattern is different from others'.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. urban | B. asset | C. metro | D. conduct |
| 2. A. factor | B. medium | C. conflict | D. downtown |
| 3. A. fabulous | B. reliable | C. variety | D. forbidden |
| 4. A. negative | B. indicator | C. determine | D. skyscraper |
| 5. A. metropolitan | B. affordable | C. Oceania | D. multicultural |
| 6. A. conduct | B. ancient | C. drawback | D. feature |
| 7. A. determine | B. pagoda | C. fabulous | D. convenient |
| 8. A. intelligence | B. facility | C. development | D. education |
| 9. A. metropolitan | B. university | C. organization | D. multicultural |
| 10. A. fascinate | B. expensive | C. restaurant | D. difference |
| 11. A. populous | B. determine | C. forbidden | D. delicious |
| 12. A. metropolitan | B. fascinating | C. multicultural | D. recreational |
| 13. A. skyscraper | B. convenience | C. resident | D. vehicle |
| 14. A. affordable | B. environment | C. variety | D. indicator |

II. Choose the options whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the rest.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. con <u>duct</u> | B. <u>diffic</u> ult | C. str <u>uck</u> | D. <u>fun</u> |
| 2. A. metrop <u>ol</u> itan | B. p <u>oll</u> uted | C. <u>for</u> bidden | D. afford able |
| 3. A. fea <u>t</u> ure | B. cu <u>lt</u> ure | C. tradit ion | D. sta <u>t</u> ue |
| 4. A. fa <u>b</u> ulous | B. pa <u>ck</u> ed | C. <u>a</u> sset | D. can al |
| 5. A. met <u>ro</u> | B. <u>o</u> cean | C. cosmop olitan | D. <u>l</u> ocal |
| 6. A. delic ious | B. fa <u>ci</u> lity | C. <u>ci</u> ty | D. pla <u>c</u> e |

III. Choose the best answer

1. Osaka has become one of the "livable" cities in Asia.
A. more B. better C. much D. **most**
2. London is one of the largest cities in the world but its populations is a lot than Tokyo.
A. small B. few C. **smaller** D. fewer
3. London is probably most famous for its museums, galleries, palaces, and other sights, but it also includes a range of peoples, cultures and religions than many other places.
A. greater B. big C. wide D. **wider**
4. Ha Noi city now is than it was 10 years ago.
A. as large B. more large C. **much** larger D. the largest
5. This river now is much less than before. People are aware of the environment and they try to keep the river clean.
A. **polluted** B. pollutes C. polluting D. pollution
6. When we were in Da Nang, we spent a lot of time around and looking at the ancient temples, bridges and houses.

- A. wander B. **wandering** C. wandered D. wanders
7. On **children** festival, the zoo is always with people, mainly children.
- A. **packed** B. had C. contained D. scored
8. You should take your shoes..... when you go into the temples.
- A. up B. in C. **off** D. on
9. When the doctor came in, he went..... all my test results and gave me a prescription.
- A. out B. **over** C. in D. of
10. A close friendship has gradually grown between them. They help each other in their daily life.
- A. in B. out C. of D. **up**
11. It is considered that life in a city is wonderful and
- A. funny B. boring C. **enjoyable** D. helpful
12. You'll have opportunities to widen your global horizons while living in this cultural capital city.
- A. **unlimited** B. comfortable C. cheerful D. populous
13. Dubai's Palm Islands in the blue ocean is the of a good and sunny life.
- A. indicator B. view C. signal D. **sign**
14. This place is so with the non-stop flow of customers to come and enjoy *Pho*.
- A. delicious B. convenient C. **popular** D. exciting
15. Visitors can take a free boat from Manhattan to Staten Island for a great of the Statue of Liberty and the Manhattan skyline.
- A. **view** B. sight C. scene D. landscape
16. Ha Noi also offers a nightlife as exciting as in Ho Chi Minh City.
- A. it B. which C. what D. **that**
17. When you want to relax, you'll have one of the world's.....cities at your feet, with more than 40% green space and open water to enjoy.
- A. greener B. **greenest** C. mostly green D. green mostly
18. Let me know when you come to Ha Noi and I'll
- A. take you out B. bring you around C. cheer you up D. **show you round**
19. We expected her at nine but she finally at eleven.
- A. **turned up** B. turned out C. came over D. grew up
20. Ann is taking extra lessons to what she missed while she was sick.
- A. take back B. get on well with C. **keep up with** D. look forward to
21. The architects got inspired to use the lotus flower in the design for the
- A. city B. skyline C. skyscraper D. downtown
22. Villagers are more kind, friendly, and warm-hearted than city
- A. **dwellers** B. foreigners C. beginners D. movers
23. You can see the of the suburbs in Ho Chi Minh City with many apartment buildings, supermarkets, shopping centres, and schools.
- A. urban area B. convenience C. **urban sprawl** D. living condition

24. Dong Khoi street is the main shopping street in the of downtown in Ho Chi Minh City.

- A. mind B. **heart** C. head D. spot

25. Opened in 1937, the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco still ranks among the top 10 bridge spans in the world.

- A. long B. longer C. mostly long D. **longest**

26. No city in America has monuments and museums into one area as Washington D.C.

- A. as much B. such many C. **as many** D. a few

27. The new student was very shy at the beginning, but then he Well with everyone.

- A. **got on** B. went on C. got over D. cheered up

28. The police neverall hope of finding the lost child.

- A. stops B. think over C. grow up D. **give up**

29. He'll be very upset if his employerhis offer.

- A. pulls down B. finds out C. turns off D. **turns down**

30. It's time to say goodbye, but I'mmeeting you all again soon.

- A. **looking forward to** B. getting on with C. keep up with D. put up with

IV. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentence.

1. I am going to visit Da Nang so can you tell me what the greatest in Da Nang are? (ATTRACT) **attractions**

2. Don't worry about your travelling because the public transport here is convenient and (RELY) **reliable**

3. Sydney is a metropolitan and city so you have a great variety of things and foods from different countries. (MULTICULTURE) **multicultural**

4. My aunt lives in one of the most parts in Paris. She is a well-known fashion designer there. (FASHION) **fashionable**

5. The outdoor food markets in Singapore are fun and so when you go there you should try some food there. (AFFORD) **affordable**

V. Complete each of the following sentences with comparatives and superlatives.

1. I think this is (noisy) part of the city.

2. This place was (dangerous) than we thought.

3. Could you show me the way to (near) bus stop.

4. The trip to Ho Chi Minh City was (interesting) for us.

5. This is (good) food I've ever eaten in this country.

6. David's new haircut is (trendy) than the previous one.

7. The building looks much (nice) in green than the previous white.

8. I had to drive my car along (narrow) road in the region.

9. Quan's house is (far) from the city centre than my house.

10. In my opinion, living in the city is (hard) than living in the country.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|----------------|----|
| 1. the noisiest | 2. More dangerous | 3. The nearest | |
| 4. the most interesting | 5. The best | 6. Trendier | 7. |
| Nicer | | | |
| 8. the narrowest/most narrow | 9. Farther/further | 10. harder | |

VI. Choose the best option A, B, C, or D to fill in each blank.

Brighton is a city (1) the south of England. It's got a population of (2) 160,000 and its location has (3) it a popular destination for tourists.

Brighton is 85km from London. It's about an hour on the train. It (4) over 8.5 million visitors annually and is the most popular seaside destination in the UK for overseas tourists.

I like Brighton because it's a (5)..... place and it's very pretty. There are some really old buildings and it's got some nice parks. For tourists, there are a (6)..... interesting shopping areas, good restaurants, large cultural, music and arts scene. Brighton is home (7) many independent record labels such as FatCat Records and Memorials of Distinction. Brighton (8) several railway stations, many bus routes, coach services and taxis. In spring and summer, thousands of students from all over Europe gather (9) language courses at many language schools here.

Every time I come here, my favourite places are the beach and the aquarium. For me, Brighton is one of (10) beautiful cities in the world.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. in | B. on | C. of | D. up |
| 2. A. which | B. about | C. approximate | D. near |
| 3. A. turned | B. started | C. made | D. converted |
| 4. A. takes | B. calls | C. invites | D. attracts |
| 5. A. interested | B. friendly | C. friend | D. beautifully |
| 6. A. many | B. lots of | C. lot of | D. much |
| 7. A. to | B. of | C. in | D. on |
| 8. A. has | B. is | C. makes | D. carries |
| 9. A. attend | B. to attend | C. attending | D. attended |
| 10. A. best | B. most | C. more | D. the most |

VII. Choose the best option to fill in each blank in the following passage.

Unlike life in the countryside which is often considered to be simple and traditional, life in the city is modern and complicated. People, from different regions, move to the cities in the hope of having a better life for them and their children. The inhabitants in city work as secretaries, businessmen, teachers, government workers, factory workers and even street vendors or construction workers.

The high cost of living requires city dwellers, especially someone with low income, to work harder or to take a part-time job. For many people, an ordinary day starts as usual by getting up in the early morning to do exercise in public parks, preparing for a full day of working and studying, then travelling along crowded boulevards or narrow streets filled with motor scooters and returning home after a busy day. They usually live in large houses, or high-rise apartment

10. I have never eaten a more delicious food than this one.

1. Many people think Da Nang City is the cleanest city in Viet Nam.

2. I felt quite interested in the trip to the craft village.

3. My father says no other place in Ha Noi is noisier than the place in which we are living.

4. He is the same as he was in 2000. / He is the same as I last met in 2000.

5. This food is the most delicious I have ever eaten.

IX. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. thanks/ so/ much/ showing/ me/ around/ city/ today/ ./

1.

1. **Thanks so much for showing me around the city today.**

2. public/ transport/ in/ Da Nang city/ more/ convenient/ reliable/ than/ any/ other/ cities/ Viet Nam/ ./

2.

2. **Public transport in Da Nang City is more convenient and reliable than other cities in Viet Nam.**

3. Sydney/ five/ big/ universities/ and/ some/ smaller/ ones/ ./

3.

3. **Sydney has five big universities and some smaller ones.**

4. The Quoc Tu Giam/ considered/ first/ oldest/ university/ of/ Viet Nam/. It/ established/ 1076/ ./

4.

4. **The Quoc Tu Giam is considered the first and the oldest university of Viet Nam. It was established in 1076.**

5. Bat Trang/ lying/ on/ Red River/ bank/ about/ 13km/ southeast/ Ha Noi/ is/ well-known/ craft/ village/ ./

5. **Bat Trang lying on the Red River bank, about 13km southeast of Ha Noi is a well-known craft village.**

5.

6. last/ week/ my friend/ went/ Hue/ / / he/ spent/ lot/ time/ wandering/ around/ and/ looking/ ancient/ temples/ palaces/ houses/ there/ ./

6.

6. **Last week, my friend went to Hue. He spent a lot of time wandering around and looking at the ancient temples, palaces and houses there.**

X. Fill in each blank with a suitable word from the box

multicultural	problems	cities	affordable	wandering
attractions	vehicles	convenient	destination	drawbacks

1. Nowadays, many students who have just left the universities try to stay in big cities because they can easily find their jobs and live alife there. **convenient**

2. During the rush hours, some parts of Ha Noi and Ho Chi Minh city are often packed with people and **vehicles**

3. If you have an opportunity to go to Sydney, you should visit both natural and manmade.....such as Sydney Harbour, the Royal National Park, Bondi Beach as well as Royal Botanical Gardens, Sydney Opera and the Harbor Bridge. **attractions**
4. When I visited Hoi An last year, I spent most of my timearound and looking at the ancient temples, houses, and bridges. **wandering**
5. When you visit Ha Noi, try some street food there because it is really delicious and **affordable**
6. Singapore is acountry. It includes Malay, Chinese, Indians, European and Vietnamese. **multicultural**
7. Every year, the Economist Intelligent Unit conducts a fascinating survey to determine which..... around the world “provide the best living conditions”. **cities**
8. I think living in a city has a number of, such as traffic jams, traffic accidents, noise pollution, visual pollution and water pollution. **drawbacks**
9. People say that air pollution together with littering is causing many..... in our city now. **problems**
10. London is one of the largest cities in the world. Its population is a lot smaller than Tokyo but it is by far the most popular tourist **destination**

XI. Writing:

Write a paragraph (about 120 words) about the drawbacks of living in a city.

Drawbacks of living in a big city

Suggested ideas:

- Pollution: air pollution, noise pollution, etc.
- High living expenses

.....

VOCABULARY

adolescence (n)	/ˌædəˈlesns/	giai đoạn vị thành niên	house-keeping skill	/haʊs ˈkiːpɪŋ skɪl/	kỹ năng làm việc nhà
adulthood (n)	/ˈædʌlθʊd/	giai đoạn trưởng thành	independence (n)	/ˌɪndɪˈpendəns/	sự độc lập, tự lập
calm(adj)	/kɑːm/	bình tĩnh	informed decision (n)	/ɪnˈfɔːmdɪˈsɪʒn/	quyết định có cân nhắc
cognitive skill	/ˈkɒɡnətɪv skɪl/	kỹ năng tư duy	left out (adj)	/left aʊt/	cảm thấy bị bỏ rơi, bị cô lập
concentrate (v) concentration (n)	/kɒnsntreɪt/	tập trung sự tập trung	life skill	/laɪf skɪl/	kỹ năng sống
confident (adj) confidence (n)	/ˈkɒnfɪdənt/	tự tin	relaxed (adj)	/rɪˈlækst/	thoải mái, thư giãn
delighted (adj)	/dɪˈlaɪtɪd/	vui sướng	resolve conflict (v)	/rɪˈzɒlv ˈkɒnflɪkt/	giải quyết xung đột
depressed (adj)	/dɪˈprest/	tuyệt vọng	risk taking (n)	/rɪsk teɪkɪŋ/	liều lĩnh
embarrassed (adj)	/ɪmˈbærəst/	xấu hổ	self-aware (adj)	/self-əˈweə(r)/	tự nhận thức, ngộ ra
emergency (n)	/ɪˈmɜːdʒənsi/	tình huống khẩn cấp	self-disciplined (adj)	/self-ˈdɪsəplɪnd/	tự rèn luyện
frustrated (adj)	/frʌˈstreɪtɪd/	bực bội (vì không giải quyết được việc gì)	stressed (adj) stressful (n)	/strest/	căng thẳng, mệt mỏi
helpline (n)	/ˈhelplaɪn/	đường dây nóng trợ giúp	tense (adj)	/tens/	căng thẳng

Now → then

Ago → before

2.3. Các trường hợp không đổi thời

– Sự thật, sự việc luôn luôn đúng:

“The earth moves round the sun” he said.

→ He said that the earth moves round the sun.

– **Câu điều kiện** loại II và III:

“If I were you, I would leave here” he said.

→ He said that if he were me, he would

leave there.

– **Wish + past simple/ past perfect:**

“I wish I lived in Da Nang”, he said.

→ He said he wished he lived in Da Nang.

– Cấu trúc “it’s time somebody did something”:

“It’s time he woke up”, she said.

→ She said it was time he woke up.

– Would/ should/ ought to/ had better/ used to không chuyển:

“You’d better work hard” he said

→ He said that I had better work hard.

2.4. Các cách chuyển đổi cơ bản

A. Say that + a statement → agree (đồng ý), refuse (từ chối), offer (đề nghị), promise (hứa), threaten + the infinitive (dọa) “All right, I’ll help you” he said.

→ *He agreed to help me.*

“Oh, no, I won’t come to your party”, he said. →

He refused to come to my party.

“I’ll look for the cat for you tomorrow if you like” he said.

→ *He offered to look after the cat for me the next day if I liked.*

“I’ll visit your parents when I arrive there”, he said

→ *He promised to visit my parents when he arrived there.*

“I’ll sell the TV set if you keep on watching it all day”, said the father →

The father threatened to sell the TV set if he kept on watching it all day.

B. Say that + a statement → accuse ...of (buộc tội), admit (thừa nhận), apologise for (xin lỗi), deny (từ chối), insist on + V-ing (khăng khăng)

- “You stole the jewels” said the inspector → *The inspector accused her of stealing the jewels.*

- “I’ve made the wall dirty” said one student. → *One student admitted making the wall dirty.*

- “I’m sorry I’m late” she said. → *She apologized for being late.*

- “No, we didn’t enter the garden” said the boy. → *The boy denied entering my garden.*

- “Certainly, I’ll buy that car for you”, said he. → *He insisted on buying me that car.*

C. Say to somebody + a statement → told somebody + that + clause

“I’ve finished all my homework”, he said to me. → *He told me that he had finished all his homework.*

D. Say + a statement → said that + clause

“I’m going to Hanoi tomorrow”, he said. → *He said that he was going to Hanoi the next day.*

E. Statement with command, request, advice, invitation, offer → advise, ask, beg, encourage, invite, order, tell, warn, remind...

“You’d better hurry”, he said.

→ *He advised me to hurry.*

“Post the letter for me, will you?” he said.

→ *He asked me to post the letter for him.*

“Make another try, please”, he said
drive too fast”, he said.

→ *He encouraged me to make another try* “Don’t
→ *He warned me not to drive too fast.*

“Remember to close the door”, he said.
door.

→ *He reminded me to close the*

“Don’t forget to come at 6 a.m tomorrow”, he said. → *He reminded to come at 6 a.m the next day.*

F. Questions in indirect speech

– Thời, **đại từ**, **tính từ** sở hữu, **trạng từ** chuyển như ở câu tường thuật. –

Yes-no questions → **asked/wanted to know if/whether**

“Are you absent from your classes today?” he asked.

→ *He asked/wanted to know if I was absent from my classes that day.* –

Wh-questions → **asked/wanted to know + question word + clause.**

“Where do you often meet your friends?” she said.

→ *She asked where I often met my friends.*

G. Questions with “shall I...” → 4 loại sau:

• About future event (sự kiện trong tương lai)

“Shall we attend the meeting tomorrow”, she said. → *She asked if they would attend the meeting the next day*

• Request for instruction or advice (Lời hướng dẫn hoặc lời khuyên)

“Shall I read it, mother?” he said.

→ *He asked his mother if he should read it.*

• Offer to do something

“Shall we bring you some new books?” she said.
books.

→ *She offered to bring me some new*

• Suggest to do something

“Shall we go to the cinema tonight”, he said.
night.

→ *He suggested going to the cinema that*

H. Questions with “Will you, would you, could you...?” (yêu cầu, đề nghị, mời) → **offer, invite, order, ask, told.**

“Will you come to my party tomorrow?” he said. → *He invited me to come to his party the next day.*

“Could you get ready at 6p.m tonight?” he said.
6p.m that night.

→ *He told/asked me to get ready at*

“Would you like some cigarettes?” he said.

→ *He offered me some cigarettes.*

“Will you shut your mouth?” he said.

→ *He ordered me to shut my mouth.*

I. Let’s do... → **suggest + V-ing** (nếu bao gồm cả người nói thực hiện hành động)

Let’s do... → **suggest + that S should do...** (có thể bao gồm hoặc không bao gồm người nói thực hiện hành động)

“Let’s go to the cinema tonight”, he said.

→ *He suggested going to the cinema that night. (anh ta cũng đi)*

→ He suggested that they should go to the cinema that night

J. Yes, let's do...→ agree

No, let's not do... → be against the idea.

"Let's eat out tonight" said the mother.

"Yes, let's" said the son.

"No, let's not" said the father.

→ The mother suggested eating out that night and the son agreed but the father was against the idea.

K. Must → had to

"I must finish my work tomorrow", he said. → *He said that he had to finish his work the next day.*

"Must you go soon?" she said.

→ *He asked if I had to go soon.*

L. Câu cảm thán trong lời nói gián tiếp

• **What + a + noun! /how + adj → said that + clause**

→ gave an exclamation of delight (vui mừng, tán thưởng), disgust (kinh tởm), honor (sợ), surprise (ngạc nhiên)

"How beautiful the picture is", he said.

→ *He said that the picture was beautiful.* –

> He gave an exclamation of delight.

"What a dirty kitchen!" she said.

→ *She said that the kitchen was dirty.*

→ She gave an exclamation of disgust.

"How wonderful", he said.

→ *He said that it was wonderful.*

→ He gave an exclamation of surprise.

• **"Yes/no" → subject + trợ động từ**

"Have you finished your homework?" he said

"Yes", she said

→ *He asked her if she had finished her homework and she said she had.*

"Are you ready for the exam?" he said.

"No", she said.

→ *He asked if she was ready for the exam and she said she wasn't.*

M. "Thank"→ subject + thanked

"Would you like to have dinner with me tonight?", he said. "thank you, I'd love to" she said. → *He invited her to have dinner with him that night. She thanked him and said she would love to.*

"Good luck", he said → *he wished me luck.*

"Congratulation!", he said → *he congratulated me.*

I. PHONETICS

1. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

1. A. calm B. fabulous C. asset D. handicraft
2. A. metro B. conduct C. grow D. mould
3. A. helpline B. remind C. artisan D. reliable
4. A. tense B. stress C. effect D. resolve
5. A. preserve B. sculpture C. skill D. risk

2. Find the word which has a different position of the main stress in each line.

1. A. adolescence B. adulthood C. cognitive D. concentrate
2. A. confident B. delighted C. depressed D. embarrassed
3. A. emergency B. frustrated C. independence D. decision
4. A. relaxed B. worried C. wander D. dweller
5. A. discipline B. determine C. culture D. indicaton

II. GRAMMAR

1. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. Tomorrow I am having a 45 – minute English test. I know about the grammar and I've learnt by heart all the new words but I still feel _____.	WORRY
2. He thinks joining in an English Speaking Club will help him to communicate with foreigners _____.	CONFIDENT
3. Lan has made a new dress for herself and she feels so _____ with her fashionable dress.	DELIGHT
4. We felt _____ because it rained all the day and we had to stay inside during our excursion to the beach.	DISAPPOINT
5. Many students complaint about their school pressures and _____. Can you think of an example of them?	FRUSTRATE

2. Choose the correct option for each gap in the sentences

1. I've been studying very hard for my final exams but I always feel _____.
A. tired B. calm C. worried D. frustrated
2. She has failed her driving test for three times. She feels _____ now.
A. depressed B. worried C. stressed D. calm
3. He did very well at the examination this morning so he feels very _____ at the moment.
A. sad B. unhappy C. relaxed D. worried
4. On the way home yesterday, his bicycle broke down so he felt very _____.
A. excited B, delighted C. confident D. frustrated
5. The boy looks _____ when he sees his parents at the door of the classroom.
A. relaxed B. confused C. tired D. left-out
6. Hoa said she was very _____ and she didn't want to go to the cinema with us.
A. quick B. fast C. smoothly D. tired
7. Huy got a bad mark for his English test. He must have been really _____.
A. disappointed B. relaxing C. interested D. happy
8. We take turns to make an English presentation about keeping our environment clean and green.
This opportunity makes everyone feel more _____ in speaking English.

A. worried B. tense C. confident D. frustrated

9. Minh feels very proud and _____ at the gold medal he has got.

A. delighted B. unhappy C. stressed D. strong

10. If you study hard and you feel tired, you had better take a rest and _____ for some minutes.

A. encourage B. relax C. advise D. empathise

3. Fill each blank with a word in the box

<i>Concentrate</i>	<i>delighted</i>	<i>embarrassed</i>	<i>adolescence</i>	<i>independent life</i>
<i>skills</i>	<i>relaxed</i>	<i>worried</i>	<i>informed</i>	<i>left out</i>

- _____ is the period between childhood and young adulthood.
- Physical changes are different for everyone at the adolescence, so we don't need to feel _____.
- My brother is 13 years old but he wants to be more _____. He would like to do everything by himself.
- When you have any problems, please ask the adults for support and guidance to make _____ decisions.
- I always _____ on my studies so I've made much progress this year.
- I felt _____ when the teacher informed that we were going to have a 45-minute English test.
- Today I am very _____ to get the highest score in my English exam today?
- Can you name some necessary _____ that Vietnamese teens should have today?
- Hoa has moved to a new school in Hanoi. She doesn't know anybody there. She is very sad and feels _____.
- I have finished all my homework the teacher gave me. I feel _____ and decide to go to the cinema with my friend this evening.

READING

1. Read the text and then choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

In Britain some families feel that learning at home is better than going to school. Home schooled children can choose when they want to learn. Does this sound more enjoyable than school?

Andrian is a science prodigy and he wants to start university by the age of fourteen. He finds school lessons easier than the ones he expects but making friends is more difficult. At home he can spend more time on his favourite subjects and is preparing to take many of his exams early. Does he ever take a break? "Yes", he says "I don't study subjects I'm not interested in."

Holly's parents weren't happy with the local school. So they made a decision to teach her at home. Her favourite is history and she often goes to museums to study. "I couldn't do that before," she says. "This is more interesting than school was". Her parents are always happy to help her.

Andrian and Holly love learning at home, but some people think that studying at school is more useful because it trains you for adult life. It teaches you to be with people you don't like, but it can also help you to make friends. Are these things more important than lessons? What do you think?

1. In Britain, people can learn at home or _____.
A. at school B. at work C. at the museum D. at break
2. Andria wants to start _____ when he's 14.
A. school B. subjects C. lessons D. university
3. He only studies things that he _____.
A. is interested in B. isn't happy with C. feel easy D. feel difficult
4. History is Holly's _____.
A. favourite test B. favourite subject
C. boring subject D. only one subject
5. Why do some people think studying at school is _____?
A. more easy B. more useful
C. stressful D. a waste of time

2. Choose the correct word A, B, C, or D for each gap to complete the following passage.

Recently, a study in the USA showed that 75% of high school students (1) _____ in tests and exams. If we include (2) _____ homework, the number is 90%. Many students don't even realize that (3) _____ they're doing is wrong. They think that cheating is OK now because it's (4) _____.

In the past, weaker students cheated but now cheats are often clever kids who need higher graders. There is more competition today.

One high school student says: "There is big (5) _____ to get into a good university. You have to get good marks, and to get good marks some teens think they have to cheat."

In the American study, 50% of teens agreed with the opinion "People sometimes have to lie and cheat to be successful. " It seems that cheating has become normal for some people. There are a lot of cheats. We see more and (6) _____ cheats in sport and in business. Unfortunately, adults don't always set a good example.

Cheating is easier with new technology. There are websites (7) _____ you can download exams and essays. You can pay people online to write an essay for you. Students are instant messaging homework answers and they can send text messages to friends (8) _____ exams or put answers into their MP3 players.

Teachers can (9) _____ cell phones and camera and use special software to detect copying in homework. School principles can suspend or expel students who cheat. But really it's more important for people (10) _____ that they don't have to cheat to be successful – cheats never win and winner never cheat.

1. A. has cheated B. have cheated C. are cheating D. cheat
2. A. copying B. to copy C. copy D. copied

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| 3. A. which | B. why | C. what | D. where |
| 4. A. normal | B. usually | C. plenty | D. common |
| 5. A. stress | B. pressure | C. nervous | D. tense |
| 6. A. much | B. more | C. less | D. fewer |
| 7. A. which | B. what | C. how | D. where |
| 8. A. on | B. at | C. in | D. of |
| 9. A. ban | B. stop | C. end | D. delay |
| 10. A. knowing | B. know | C. to know | D. known |

WRITING

1. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

- Mai's parents/ always/ expect/ her/ get/ good/ grades/ and/ go/ top/ university/ study/ medicine.
- Minh/ feel/ very/ worried/ because/ he/ have/ big/ assignment/ complete/ and/ he/ not/ know/ where/ start.
- You/ thought/ about/ asking/ friend/ who/ confident/ about/ maths/ help/ you/?
- You/ done/ very/ well/ exam./ I/ think/ you/ relax/ now.
- It/ not/ difficult/ make/ new/ friends./ you/ should/ be/ open/ friendly/ first.

2. Rewrite the following sentences in reported speech.

- "What are you most worried about before the exam?" my teacher asked me.
- "If you get high scores in your final exam, I'll buy you a computer." His mother said.
- "My parents are very glad because my sister has passed the entrance exam to go to a top university." Lan told me.
- "I couldn't sleep last night because I felt nervous about the exam." Hoa said.
- "I'm so delighted. I've just received a mobile phone from my brother. My brother has just been abroad." Quang said.

3. Rewrite the following sentences using questions words + to V.

- Could you tell me when I should explain everything to our teacher?
- I don't know what I should do to make my mother happy.
- She wondered how she could tell her mother about the stolen bicycle.
- We are not sure what we should do to make our house more beautiful at Christmas.
- My mother can decide where we should go at summer holidays.

TEST 3

I. Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.

- A. attraction B. emergency C. administrative D. recognition
- A. artisan B. confident C. negative D. underpass
- A. affordable B. delighted C. loudspeaker D. exhibition
- A. lacquerware B. contestant C. fabulous D. noticeable
- A. authenticity B. metropolitan C. cooperative D. multicultural

II. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it,

- We have no idea who talking to when we have problems.

- A B C D
2. Nick asked Phong whether he had gone to Mai's birthday party last night.
- A B C D
3. Lan is very depressing because her closest friend is moving to another city.
- A B C D
4. Their daughter said that she doesn't want to take exams into economic universities.
- A B C D
5. I don't know what to do as these instructions are extremely confused.
- A B C D

III. Give the correct form off the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I think Tom and Mary have known each other since their _____.	CHILD
2. My brother feels _____ when he's playing the guitar.	RELAX
3. Lan was upset because her parents _____ her.	UNDERSTAND
4. I often suffer from _____ during the wintertime.	
5. Everything was _____ to me when I visited Gold Coast for the first time.	DEPRESS
6. When you grow up, you'll feel you want more _____ and responsibility.	EXCITE
7. We all _____ with you when we heard that you failed the driving test again.	DEPEND
8. Nga's dream is to be a _____, but her parents want her to be a medical doctor.	SYMPATHY
9. Between 11 and 13 years of age, the adolescent's brain experiences rapid _____ of nerve cells.	MUSIC
10. I feel really tired after spending a _____ night studying for the exam.	GROW
	SLEEP

IV. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

1. Pressure _____ children to get into top schools has reached a crisis point.
A. at B. under C. on D. with
2. Perhaps what you're reading or hearing is boring, which makes it hard to _____ on the book or the conversation.
A. concentrate B. rely C. depend D. notice
3. A great way to improve _____ Skills is to keep trying new things.
A. reason B. reasoned C. reasoning D. reasons
4. As children move toward _____, they are less likely to ask for advice.
A. dependent B. dependence C. independent D. independence
5. Taking good notes _____ students to evaluate organize and summarize information.
A. requests B. requires C. allows D. offers

6. Susan needs someone to who her how to _____ her anxiety and depression.
A. empathize B. try C. succeed D. manage
7. Mi asked what information she _____ that assignment.
A. needs to be done B. needed doing C. need to do D. needed to do
8. My teacher told me that I _____ attend the math course for the higher level programme that I _____ for.
A. can't/ apply B. couldn't/ apply C. can't/ applied D. couldn't/ had applied
9. My parents asked me to find out _____ it gave you so much trouble.
A. what B. which C. why D. where
10. I am not sure _____ I can solve this problem.
A. how B. what C. who D. by whom

V. Read and choose the best answer

LONDON

London is a big city, but many of the people who live there (1) _____ it as a number of small towns put together. Each district has its own identity and atmosphere and some of parts are even described by their inhabitants as 'villages'. Much of the centre of the city consists (2) _____ shops and businesses and the majority of people live in the suburbs. A great (3) _____ of them travel to work in the city every day by train, bus, tube or car; this is called commuting. Commuters might spend as much as two hours every morning getting to work and another two hours getting home again. The cost of living in London is (4) _____ than in most other parts of Britain, and many people are paid extra money on the top of their salaries because of this. Millions of visitors come to London every year from all over the world for to see the famous sights, such as Buckingham Palace, where the Queen lives, and many other historic buildings. London is also very famous for its theatres, red buses, and black taxis. Some people find it as a noisy, dirty place (5) _____ it has many large, pleasant parts where everyone can enjoy themselves some peace and quiet. London has many attractions, both for people from overseas and for people from other parts of Britain.

1. A. regard B. feel C. think D. see
2. A. in B. on C. of D. at
3. A. a lot B. lot C. much D. many
4. A. taller B. higher C. bigger D. much
5. A. but B. although C. because D. since

VI. Read the passage and choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each question

You can do a few things to make homework less stressful. First, be sure you understand the assignment. Write it down in your notebook or day planner if you need to, and don't be afraid to ask questions about what is expected. It is much easier to make a minute to ask the teacher during or after class than to struggle to remember later that night! If you want, you can ask how long the particular homework assignment should take to complete so you can plan your time.

Second, use any extra time you have in school to work on your homework. Many schools have libraries that are specifically designed to allow students to study or get homework done. The more work you can get done in school, the less you will have to do that night.

Third, pace yourself. If you don't finish your homework during school, think about how much you have left and what else is going on that day, and then plan your time. Most middle students should have between 1 and 3 hours of homework a night. If it is a heavy homework day, you will need to devote more time to homework.

No one is expected to understand everything, and maybe you need some help. The first place to turn for help is your teacher. But what if you don't feel comfortable with your teacher? If you are in a big enough school, there maybe other teachers who teach the same subject. Speak to other teachers directly and you may be in luck. Sometimes it just helps to have someone explain something in a different way. Moreover, you might also be able to get some help from another student. If there is someone you like who is a good student, think about asking that person if you can study together.

1. The most important thing that you should do when you get your assignment may be _____.
 - A. to know when you hand it in
 - B. to understand it and its requirements
 - C. to know how long it takes to complete it
 - D. to remember it in order to plan the time
2. If you have any free time left at school, you should _____.
 - A. use it to do your homework in the library
 - B. spend time with your friends
 - C. use it to understand the assignment
 - D. use it to make your day planner
3. When students need some help, they should _____.
 - A. never ask other teachers because it will hurt their own teachers
 - B. always turn to their own teacher for help
 - C. ask any good students at the subject in your school
 - D. go to their teachers or other teachers teaching the same subject
4. The main idea of the first three paragraphs is _____.
 - A. to get help when you need it
 - B. to do homework immediately
 - C. to create a homework plan
 - D. to ask your teachers for more explanation
5. According to the passage, all of the following are correct EXCEPT that _____.
 - A. it takes a student more than three hours a night if there is much homework.
 - B. it is good to have the explanation in a different way
 - C. you only do your homework at home between 1 and 3 hours a night
 - D. it is very useful to take a minute to ask the teacher during or after class

VII. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence. Use the word given and other words as necessary. Do not change the form of the given word.

1. "What do you think about teenagers who dye their hair?" THOUGHT
2. It was quite surprising for us that he passed the exam. SURPRISED

3. "If I were you, I would tell her the truth", said Phong to Khoa ADVISED
4. We don't know how we should solve the problems. TO
5. "Have I ever met him before?" Laura said to herself. WONDERED

KEY

I. PHONETICS

1. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

1. **A. calm** B. fabulous C. asset D. handicraft
2. A. metro **B. conduct** C. grow D. mould
3. A. helpline B. remind **C. artisan** D. reliable
4. A. tense B. stress C. effect **D. resolve**
5. **A. preserve** B. sculpture C. skill D. risk

2. Find the word which has a different position of the main stress in each line.

1. **A. adolescence** B. adulthood C. cognitive D. concentrate
2. **A. confident** B. delighted C. depressed D. embarrassed
3. A. emergency B. frustrated **C. independence** D. decision
4. **A. relaxed** B. worried C. wander D. dweller
5. A. discipline **B. determine** C. culture D. indicator

II. GRAMMAR

1. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

6. Tomorrow I am having a 45 – minute English test. I know about the grammar and I've learnt by heart all the new words but I still feel _____.	WORRIED
7. He thinks joining in an English Speaking Club will help him to communicate with foreigners _____.	CONFIDENTLY
8. Lan has made a new dress for herself and she feels so _____ with her fashionable dress.	DELIGHTED
9. We felt _____ because it rained all the day and we had to stay inside during our excursion to the beach.	DISAPPOINTED
10. Many students complaint about their school pressures and _____. Can you think of an example of them?	FRUSTRATIONS

2. Choose the correct option for each gap in the sentences

1. I've been studying very hard for my _____ final exams but I always feel _____.
A. tired B. calm **C. worried** D. frustrated
2. She has failed her driving test for three times. She feels _____ now.
A. **depressed** B. worried C. stressed D. calm

3. He did very well at the examination this morning so he feels very _____ at the moment.
A. sad B. unhappy **C. relaxed** D. worried
4. On the way home yesterday, his bicycle broke down so he felt very _____.
A. excited B. delighted C. confident **D. frustrated**
5. The boy looks _____ when he sees his parents at the door of the classroom.
A. relaxed **B. confused** C. tired D. left-out
6. Hoa said she was very _____ and she didn't want to go to the cinema with us.
A. quick B. fast C. smoothly **D. tired**
7. Huy got a bad mark for his English test. He must have been really _____.
A. disappointed B. relaxing C. interested D. happy
8. We take turns to make an English presentation about keeping our environment clean and green.
This opportunity makes everyone feel more _____ in speaking English.
A. worried B. tense **C. confident** D. frustrated
9. Minh feels very proud and _____ at the gold medal he has got.
A. delighted B. unhappy C. stressed D. strong
10. If you study hard and you feel tired, you had better take a rest and _____ for some minutes.
A. encourage **B. relax** C. advise D. empathise

3. Fill each blank with a word in the box

5	Concentrate	7	delighted	2	embarrassed	1	adolescence	3
	independent							
8	life skills	10	relaxed	6	worried	4	informed	9
								left out

1. _____ is the period between childhood and young adulthood.
2. Physical changes are different for everyone at the adolescence, so we don't need to feel _____.
3. My brother is 13 years old but he wants to be more _____. He would like to do everything by himself.
4. When you have any problems, please ask the adults for support and guidance to make _____ decisions.
5. I always _____ on my studies so I've made much progress this year.
6. I felt _____ when the teacher informed that we were going to have a 45-minute English test.
7. Today I am very _____ to get the highest score in my English exam today?
8. Can you name some necessary _____ that Vietnamese teens should have today?
9. Hoa has moved to a new school in Hanoi. She doesn't know anybody there. She is very sad and feels _____.
10. I have finished all my homework the teacher gave me. I feel _____ and decide to go to the cinema with my friend this evening.

READING

1. Read the text and then choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

In Britain some families feel that learning at home is better than going to school. Home schooled children can choose when they want to learn. Does this sound more enjoyable than school?

Andrian is a science prodigy and he wants to start university by the age of fourteen. He finds school lessons easier than the ones he expects but making friends is more difficult. At home he can spend more time on his favourite subjects and is preparing to take many of his exams early. Does he ever take a break? “Yes”, he says “ I don’t study subjects I’m not interested in.”

Holly’s parents weren’t happy with the local school. So they made a decision to teach her at home. Her favourite is history and she often goes to museums to study. “ I couldn’t do that before,” she says. “ This is more interesting than school was”. Her parents are always happy to help her.

Andrian and Holly love learning at home, but some people think that studying at school is more useful because it trains you for adult life. It teaches you to be with people you don’t like, but it can also help you to make friends. Are these things more important than lessons? What do you think?

6. In Britain, people can learn at home or _____.
A. at school B. at work C. at the museum D. at break
7. Andria wants to start _____ when he’s 14.
A. school B. subjects C. lessons **D. university**
8. He only studies things that he _____.
A. is interested in B. isn’t happy with C. feel easy D. feel difficult
9. History is Holly’s _____.
A. favourite test **B. favourite subject**
C. boring subject D. only one subject
10. Why do some people think studying at school is _____?
A. more easy **B. more useful**
C. stressful D. a waste of time

2. Choose the correct word A, B, C, or D for each gap to complete the following passage.

Recently, a study in the USA showed that 75% of high school students (1) _____ in tests and exams. If we include (2) _____ homework, the number is 90%. Many students don’t even realize that (3) _____ they’re doing is wrong. They think that cheating is OK now because it’s (4) _____.

In the past, weaker students cheated but now cheats are often clever kids who need higher graders. There is more competition today.

One high school student says: “There is big (5) _____ to get into a good university. You have to get good marks, and to get good marks some teens think they have to cheat.”

In the American study, 50% of teens agreed with the opinion “People sometimes have to lie and cheat to be succeed. “ It seems that cheating has become normal for some people. There are a lot

of cheats. We see more and (6) _____ cheats in sport and in business. Unfortunately, adults don't always set a good example.

Cheating is easier with new technology. There are websites (7) _____ you can download exams and essays. You can pay people online to write an essay for you. Students are instant messaging homework answers and they can send text messages to friends (8) _____ exams or put answers into their MP3 players.

Teachers can (9) _____ cell phones and camera and use special software to detect copying in homework. School principles can suspend or expel students who cheat. But really it's more important for people (10) _____ that they don't have to cheat to be successful – cheats never win and winner never cheat.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 11. A. has cheated | B. have cheated | C. are cheating | D. cheat |
| 12. A. copying | B. to copy | C. copy | D. copied |
| 13. A. which | B. why | C. what | D. where |
| 14. A. normal | B. usually | C. plenty | D. common |
| 15. A. stress | B. pressure | C. nervous | D. tense |
| 16. A. much | B. more | C. less | D. fewer |
| 17. A. which | B. what | C. how | D. where |
| 18. A. on | B. at | C. in | D. of |
| 19. A. ban | B. stop | C. end | D. delay |
| 20. A. knowing | B. know | C. to know | D. known |

WRITING

1. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

6. Mai's parents/ always/ expect/ her/ get/ good/ grades/ and/ go/ top/ university/ study/ medicine.

Mai's parents always expect her to get good grades and go to a top university to study medicine.

7. Minh/ feel/ very/ worried/ because/ he/ have/ big/ assignment/ complete/ and/ he/ not/ know/ where/ start.

Minh feels very worried because he has a big assignment to complete and he doesn't know where to start.

8. You/ thought/ about/ asking/ friend/ who/ confident/ about/ maths/ help/ you/?

Have you thought about asking a friend who is confident about maths to help you?

9. You/ done/ very/ well/ exam/./ I/ think/ you/ relax/ now.

You have done very well in the exam. I think you should relax now.

10. It/ not/ difficult/ make/ new/ friends/./ you/ should/ be/ open/ friendly/ first.

It's not difficult to make new friends. You should be open and friendly first.

2. Rewrite the following sentences in reported speech.

1. "What are you most worried about before the exam?" my teacher asked me.

2. "If you get high scores in your final exam, I'll buy you a computer." His mother said.

3. "My parents are very glad because my sister has passed the entrance exam to go to a top university." Lan told me.
4. "I couldn't sleep last night because I felt nervous about the exam." Hoa said.
5. "I'm so delighted. I've just received a mobile phone from my brother. My brother has just been abroad." Quang said.

1. My teacher asked me what I was most worried about before the exam.
2. His mother told him that if he got high scores in his final exam, she would buy him a computer.
3. Lan told me her parents were very glad because her sister had passed the entrance exam to go to a top university.
4. Hoa said she couldn't sleep the night before because she had felt nervous about the exam.
5. Quang said he was so delighted because he had just received a mobile phone from his brother. His brother had just been abroad.

3. Rewrite the following sentences using questions words + to V.

1. Could you tell me when I should explain everything to our teacher?
2. I don't know what I should do to make my mother happy.
3. She wondered how she could tell her mother about the stolen bicycle.
4. We are not sure what we should do to make our house more beautiful at Christmas.
5. My mother can decide where we should go at summer holidays.

1. Could you tell me when to explain everything to our teacher?
2. I don't know what to do to make my mother happy.
3. She wondered how to tell her mother about the stolen bicycle.
4. We are not sure what to do to make our house more beautiful at Christmas.
5. My mother can't decide where to go at summer holidays.

TEST 3

I. Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. attraction B. emergency C. administrative **D. recognition**
2. **A. artisan** B. confident C. negative D. underpass
3. A. affordable B. delighted C. loudspeaker **D. exhibition**
4. A. lacquerware **B. contestant** C. fabulous D. noticeable
5. A. authenticity B. metropolitan **C. cooperative** D. multicultural

II. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it,

1. We have no idea who talking to when we have problems.
A **B** C D
2. Nick asked Phong whether he had gone to Mai's birthday party last night.
A B C **D**
3. Lan is very depressing because her closest friend is moving to another city.
A B C D
4. Their daughter said that she doesn't want to take exams into economic universities.

A B C D

5. I don't know what to do as these instructions are extremely confused.

A B C D

III. Give the correct form off the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

11. I think Tom and Mary have known each other since their _____.	CHILD HOOD
12. My brother feels _____when he's playing the guitar.	RELAXED
13. Lan was upset because her parents _____her.	UNDERSTOOD
14. I often suffer from _____during the wintertime.	DEPRESSION
15. Everything was _____to me when I visited Gold Coast for the first time.	EXCITEING
16. When you grow up, you'll feel you want more _____and responsibility.	INDEPENDENT
17. We all _____with you when we heard that you failed the driving test again.	SYMPATHISE
18. Nga's dream is to be a _____, but her parents want her to be a medical doctor.	MUSICIAN
19. Between 11 and 13 years of age, the adolescent's brain experiences rapid _____of nerve cells.	GROWTH
20. I feel really tired after spending a _____night studying for the exam.	SLEEPLESS

IV. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

- Pressure _____children to get into top schools has reached a crisis point.
A. at B. under C. on D. with
- Perhaps what you're reading or hearing is boring, which makes it hard to _____ on the book or the conversation.
A. concentrate B. rely C. depend D. notice
- A great way to improve _____Skills is to keep trying new things.
A. reason B. reasoned C. reasoning D. reasons
- As children move toward _____, they are less likely to ask for advice.
A. dependent B. dependence C. independent D. independence
- Taking good notes _____students to evaluate organize and summarize information.
A. requests B. requires C. allows D. offers
- Susan needs someone to who her how to _____her anxiety and depression.
A. empathize B. try C. succeed D. manage
- Mi asked what information she _____that assignment.
A. needs to be done B. needed doing C. need to do D. needed to do

8. My teacher told me that I _____ attend the math course for the higher level programme that I _____ for.
A. can't/ apply B. couldn't/ apply C. can't/ applied **D. couldn't/ had applied**
9. My parents asked me to find out _____ it gave you so much trouble.
A. what B. which **C. why** D. where
10. I am not sure _____ I can solve this problem.
A. **how** B. what C. who D. by whom

V. Read and choose the best answer

LONDON

London is a big city, but many of the people who live there (1) _____ it as a number of small towns put together. Each district has its own identity and atmosphere and some of parts are even described by their inhabitants as 'villages'. Much of the centre of the city consists (2) _____ shops and businesses and the majority of people live in the suburbs. A great (3) _____ of them travel to work in the city every day by train, bus, tube or car; this is called commuting. Commuters might spend as much as two hours every morning getting to work and another two hours getting home again. The cost of living in London is (4) _____ than in most other parts of Britain, and many people are paid extra money on the top of their salaries because of this. Millions of visitors come to London every year from all over the world for to see the famous sights, such as Buckingham Palace, where the Queen lives, and many other historic buildings. London is also very famous for its theatres, red buses, and black taxis. Some people find it as a noisy, dirty place (5) _____ it has many large, pleasant parts where everyone can enjoy themselves some peace and quiet. London has many attractions, both for people from overseas and for people from other parts of Britain.

6. **A. regard** B. feel C. think D. see
7. A. in B. on **C. of** D. at
8. A. a lot B. lot C. much **D. many**
9. A. taller **B. higher** C. bigger D. much
10. **A. but** B. although C. because D. since

VI. Read the passage and choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each question

You can do a few things to make homework less stressful. First, be sure you understand the assignment. Write it down in your notebook or day planner if you need to, and don't be afraid to ask questions about what is expected. It is much easier to make a minute to ask the teacher during or after class than to struggle to remember later that night! If you want, you can ask how long the particular homework assignment should take to complete so you can plan your time.

Second, use any extra time you have in school to work on your homework. Many schools have libraries that are specifically designed to allow students to study or get homework done. The more work you can get done in school, the less you will have to do that night.

Third, pace yourself. If you don't finish your homework during school, think about how much you have left and what else is going on that day, and then plan your time. Most middle students

should have between 1 and 3 hours of homework a night. If it is a heavy homework day, you will need to devote more time to homework.

No one is expected to understand everything, and maybe you need some help. The first place to turn for help is your teacher. But what if you don't feel comfortable with your teacher? If you are in a big enough school, there maybe other teachers who teach the same subject. Speak to other teachers directly and you may be in luck. Sometimes it just helps to have someone explain something in a different way. Moreover, you might also be able to get some help from another student. If there is someone you like who is a good student, think about asking that person if you can study together.

1. The most important thing that you should do when you get your assignment may be ____.

- A. to know when you hand it in
- B. **to understand it and its requirements**
- C. to know how long it takes to complete it
- D. to remember it in order to plan the time

2. If you have any free time left at school, you should ____.

- A. **use it to do your homework in the library**
- B. spend time with your friends
- C. use it to understand the assignment
- D. use it to make your day planner

3. When students need some help, they should ____.

- A. never ask other teachers because it will hurt their own teachers
- B. always turn to their own teacher for help
- C. ask any good students at the subject in your school
- D. **go to their teachers or other teachers teaching the same subject**

4. The main idea of the first three paragraphs is ____.

- A. to get help when you need it
- B. to do homework immediately
- C. **to create a homework plan**
- D. to ask your teachers for more explanation

5. According to the passage, all of the following are correct EXCEPT that _____. A. it takes a student more than three hours a night if there is much homework.

- B. it is good to have the explanation in a different way
- C. **you only do your homework at home between 1 and 3 hours a night**
- D. it is very useful to take a minute to ask the teacher during or after class

VII. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence. Use the word given and other words as necessary. Do not change the form of the given word.

1. "What do you think about teenagers who dye their hai?" THOUGHT They asked
me what I thought about teenagers who dyed their hair.

2. It was quite surprising for us that he passed the exam. SURPRISED We were quite surprised that he passed the exam.
3. “If I were you, I would tell her the truth”, said Phong to Khoa ADVISED Phong advised Khoa to tell her the truth.
4. We don’t know how we should solve the problems. TO
We don’t know how to solve the problems.
5. “Have I ever met him before?” Laura said to herself. WONDERED
Laura wondered whether she had met him before.

UNIT 4 LIFE IN THE PAST

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

Act out (v)	/ækt aʊt/	Đóng vai, diễn	Occasion (n)	/ə'keɪʒn/	Dịp
Arctic (adj)	/'ɑ:ktɪk/	(thuộc về) Bắc cực	Pass on (ph.v)	/pɑ:s ɒn/	Truyền lại, kể lại
Bare-footed (adj)	/'beəfʊtɪd/	Chân đất	Post (v)	/pəʊst/	Đăng tải
Behave (v) (+oneself)	/br'heɪv/	Ngoan, biết cư xử	Snack (n)	/snæk/	Đồ ăn vặt
Dogsled (n)	/'dɒɡsled/	Xe chó kéo	Street vendor (n)	/stri:t 'vendə(r)/	Người bán hàng rong
Domed (adj)	/dəʊmd/	Hình vòm	Strict (adj)	/strikt/	Nghiêm khắc
Downtown (adv)	/ˌdaʊn'taʊn/	Vào trung tâm thành phố	Treat (v)	/tri:t/	Cư xử
Eat out (v)	/i:t aʊt/	Ăn ngoài	Tradition (n)	/trə'dɪʃn/	Truyền thống
Entertain (v)	/ˌentə'teɪn/	Giải trí	Generation (n)	/ˌdʒenə'reɪʃn/	Thế hệ
Event (n)	/ɪ'vent/	Sự kiện	Feather (n)	/'feðə(r)/	Lông chim
Face to face (adv)	/feɪs tu feɪs/	Trực diện, mặt đối mặt	Custom (n)	/'kʌstəm/	Phong tục
Facility (n)	/fə'sɪləti/	Phương tiện, tiện nghi	Funeral (n)	/'fju:nərəl/	Đám tang
Igloo (n)	/'ɪɡluː/	Lều tuyết	Bride (n)	/braɪd/	Cô dâu
Illiterate (adj)	/ɪ'lɪtərət/	Thất học	Groom (n)	/ɡru:m/	Chú rể

Loudspeaker (n)	/ˌlaʊdˈspi:kə(r)/	Loa	Attendant (n)	/əˈtendənt/	Người phục vụ, người tham gia
Preserve (v)	/prɪˈzɜ:v/	Bảo quản, bảo tồn	Tug of war	/tʌg əv wɔ:(r)/	Trò kéo co
Seniority (n)	/ˌsi:nɪˈɔ:rəti/	Thâm niên	Punishment (n)	/ˈpʌnɪʃmənt/	Sự trừng phạt
Extend (v)	/ɪkˈstend/	Mở rộng	Dye (v)	/daɪ/	Nhuộm
Tuberculosis (n)	/tjuːˌbɜ:kjuˈləʊsɪs/	Bệnh lao	Fatal (adj)	/ˈfeɪtl/	Tai hại, chết người
Barber (n)	/ˈbɑ:bə(r)/	Thợ cắt tóc	Bushwalking (n)		Cuộc đi bộ nơi hoang dã
Obesity (n)	/əʊˈbi:səti/	Sự béo phì			

II. Grammar:

Wishes for the present

1. Wishes for the present or future:

S1 + wish/ wishes + S2 + V (past simple)

E.g: I wish my friends *spent* less time playing computer games and more time outdoors.

2. Wishes for something that we want to be happening right at this moment.

S1 + wish/ wishes + S2 + V (past continuous)

E.g: My son wishes he *were studying* Marketing instead of Hospitality.

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. vulnerable | B. satellite | C. eleven | D. element |
| 2. A. character | B. publisher | C. wonderful | D. understand |
| 3. A. interesting | B. surprising | C. amusing | D. successful |
| 4. A. arctic | B. behave | C. event | D. facility |
| 5. A. illiterate | B. occasion | C. relaxed | D. sculpture |

II. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. wome <u>n</u> | B. be <u>n</u> ch | C. le <u>n</u> d | D. spe <u>n</u> d |
| 2. A. b <u>r</u> ain | B. lam <u>b</u> | C. co <u>m</u> b | D. clim <u>b</u> |
| 3. A. phoned <u>u</u> | B. calle <u>d</u> | C. coo <u>k</u> ed | D. climbe <u>d</u> |
| 4. A. surface | B. neckla <u>c</u> e | C. fa <u>c</u> e | D. pala <u>c</u> e |

5. A. chew

B. news

C. crew

D. screw

III. Complete the sentence using "wish".

1. He is very short. He he taller.
2. They don't have a car. They they a car.
3. He doesn't have any children. He he a child.
4. He is overweight. He he thinner.
5. I can't play the piano. I I play the piano.

IV. Complete with the right words given in the box. You can use the words more than once, there are some extra.

play	dance	be	use	have
go	spend	jump	ride	collect

1. She used to with dolls when she was a child.
2. They didn't use to any sports.
3. He didn't use to a scrapbook.
4. When they were younger, they used to to the beach, ride a bike and collect comics.
5. I used tovery shy, but I am not anymore.
6. After school, my friend and I used to chess and hide-and-seek.
7. I used to my vacation in a summer camp with my friends.
8. I used to a pet when I was 5 years old. Now I don't have it anymore.

V. Give the right tense of the verbs given and then fill in each space to complete the sentence.

1. I don't know where my wallet is. I wish I where my wallet was.
(know)
2. Michael is in the park playing with the older boys. I wish Michael with them.
(play)
3. Things are not good in the country. I hope everything better. (get)
4. I am tired of hearing your screaming. It is time you screaming in my ear!
(stop)
5. I can't go to the pool with my friends because I can't swim. Oh, I wish I
(swim)
6. Veronica doesn't like calling boys. I really wish she me. I want to go out with her. (call)

7. David and Christian are at the cinema right now. I hope they themselves, **(enjoy)**
8. You are a great guy Jimmy, but I don't love you. I wish I you. **(love)**
9. This party is so boring and Gina is not coming. It is time I I'm tired of being here. **(leave)**
10. Tommy is a great piano player. I wish I the piano just like him. **(play)**

VI. Read the passage and answer what Molly Hornby used to do when she was young. Decide which ones are right or wrong.

“I was a young girl in the 1960s. My friends and I used to do a lot of things which shocked our parents. We used to do things our mothers never did. We cut our hair, we wore short skirts, we smoked, and went dancing. We danced to the music of Elvis Presley and the Beatles. We also got the chance to see the Beatles live at a concert once. It was amazing. My father went fishing once a week. He always wished that I would accompany him, but fishing was not my cup of tea. Instead my friends and I went for picnics in the surrounding area quite often. My

	Right	Wrong
Molly Hornby... ...used to do a lot of things which shocked her parents. ...used to cut her hair. ...used to wear long skirts. ...used to sing Elvis Presley's songs. ...went to a Beatles' concert once. ...used to go fishing with her father. ...used to go for picnics in the surrounding area quite often. ...used to drive to Brighton with her friends and boyfriend. ...used to go to the pictures twice a week. ...used to watch films with Marlon Brando and Elizabeth Taylor.		

boyfriend had a car, a 1960 Ford Falcon, so he always picked us up and we often drove to

live	space	signals	poor	events	radio
until	transmitted	expensive	landing	one	use

Brighton. We went to the pictures twice a week and I loved to watch films with Marlon Brando and Elizabeth Taylor, especially the 'Reflections in a Golden Eye' starring both of them. I still love to watch this film. It's my favourite. I can remember it all so clearly.” **VII. Complete the passage with the words provided in the box.**

All early television was broadcast in black and white. Colour television was possible, but it was too (1) and of very (2) quality (3) the middle of the 1950s. Colour television broadcasts began in the United States in 1954, in Japan in 1960 and in Europe in 1967.

The first (4) on the moon was broadcast (5) on television in 1969, and now television programs are (6) all over the world immediately through the (7) of satellites that transmit the (8) from the earth, through the (9) and back to the earth.

More people now get their news and information through television than through newspapers and (10) The development of television is (11) of the most rapid and exciting (12) of our century.

VIII. Choose the best options A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

It's hard to believe that (1) had computers a few years ago. I wonder how people lived. There must have been a lot of (2)

I can't imagine writing everything by hand. I also wonder how everything worked (3) computers. We need computers today for everything. Hospitals, airports, the police, etc. nothing can work without computers. I'm sure I'd be ten times busier than now if I didn't have a computer. Imagine having to find (4) paper and an envelope and then walking down the street to mail a letter! I love my computer. It makes everything in my life so

(5) Sure, it freezes and crashes sometimes. Sure I lose some data. But that's not often. Most of the time my computer is like my best friend.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. no one | B. any one | C. someone | D. no body |
| 2. A. paperworks | B. work paper | C. paperwork | D. paper work |
| 3. A. with | B. without | C. by | D. in |
| 4. A. pieces of | B. a piece | C. piece of | D. a piece of |
| 5. A. convenient | B. convenience | C. inconvenient | D. inconvenience |

IX. There are 5 mistakes in this passage. Find out and correct them.

	Your corrections
--	-------------------------

My favourite subjects at school was history. I don't know why. I loved reading the story about famous people and famous events. When I was little, history was just stories. As I got old, I realized history is the study of how we got here today. It's a long journey that describes all the wars, great people, inventions, disasters, etc. that have bring us to this point in time. I now love any kind of history. It's fascinating to visit a new country and learn about its historical. Watching the news today is like seeing history unfold. Lots of the things I learnt at school now make the news more interesting. History provides us with the perfect background information to a news story.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

X. Write full sentences to make a passage, using the suggested words and phrases given.

1. I / grow up / small / town / northeast / England / . /

.....

2. It / the coast / , / next / sea / . / And / now / I / live / London / , / which / much / big / place / compare / to where / I / grew up / . /

.....

3. When / I / child / , / I / use / walk / everywhere / . / The / town / small / that / you / could / walk / one side / other / and / you / never / really / need / car / . /

.....

4. When / I / young / , / mealtimes / use / quite predictable / . / And / we'd / eat / similar / foods / every day / , / consist / meat / , / potatoes / , / root vegetables / , / whatever / season / time / . /

.....

5. We / never / used / have / very / varied meals / , / whereas / now / my diet / change / a lot / . /

.....

6. I /not /eat / meat / anymore ./

7. I / have / diet / that's all / vegetables / and / fruit / . /

8. I / more / adventure / what /1 / eat / now / than / what /1 / do / when / I / child / . /

XI. Write down at least five things you would change about your home if you were your father.

Example: If I were my father, I would let my son go to school by bicycle himself.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

TEST 1 (UNIT 4)

I. Choose a word in each line that has a different stress pattern.

A. surprise B. event C. behave D. damage

A. develop B. understand C. imagine D. consider

A. illiterate B. communicate C. entertainment D.

traditional

A. programme B. downtown C. postman D.
custom

A. importance B. violence C. buffalo D.

grandparent

II. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct verb/verb phrase from the box with the correct verb form.

transfer	warm up	lose	play	fail	toss	create
pick up					gather	catch

Bamboo jacks, a girls' game, includes ten thin, round bamboo sticks and a small tennis ball. The player (1) the ball into the air. While the ball is in the air, she must quickly pick up the sticks and then (2) the ball. In the first round, the player (3) the sticks one by one. Next, she (4) two sticks at a time, and so forth up to ten. In these stages she plays with only one hand.

The peak of the game is the last, most animated stage with all ten sticks in a bundle. During this stage, the player tosses the ball and then (5) the pack of sticks from one hand to the other. If a player's hands are not swift or if her eyes are not sharp, or if she (6) to coordinate the two, she will (7) her turn.

Playing bamboo jacks (8) the body and (9) a lot of fun. During summer or autumn, small girls (10) it everywhere, from the shade of a village banyan tree to a deserted market stall.

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

1. You have to use your when you read the story. IMAGINE
2. I think corporal is now prohibited in schools. PUNISH
3., we used to cook five-colour sticky rice on the first day of the TRADITION
lunar month.
4. Tom says he can't put up with Mary's any longer. BEHAVE
5. Those over there are friends of both the bride and ATTEND
groom.
6. The photo brought back many happy memories of my CHILD
.....
7. I think riding a bicycle is especially when it rains. CONVENIENCE
8. She said that in her village used to be arranged by MARRY
parents. 9. Thirty years ago only people in the city had the WEALTH
television.
10. We used to of our home village when we lived THOUGHT
overseas.

IV. Complete each of the following sentences with used to/ didn't used to using the verbs from the box.

be	buy	climb	play	shop
----	-----	-------	------	------

swim

travel

walk

watch

write

1. In my childhood, there so many high buildings here. There were parks.
2. People with pens, but now they use computers.
3. My brother football, but an injure stopped him from playing.
4. In my grandfather's youth, people by car. They rode horses.
5. I to school, but two weeks ago I got a bike so now I ride it every day.
6. My sister when we go to the beach because she was afraid of water.
7. Mr. Lam television in the morning. He did it in the evening.
8. David was a good climber in his youth. He very high mountains.
9. My parents me expensive toys as we were not rich.
10. We in the town market. We bought fish, fruit and vegetables.

V. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. Many children in our village are still They can't read or write.
 A. creative B. illiterate C. unhealthy D. traditional
2. We usually ourselves by playing hike and seek or flying kites.
 A. behave B. collect C. imagine D. entertain
3. Laura is in the of writing in her dairy every day.
 A. habit B. custom C. practice D. generation
4. The children started to each part of the story.
 A. go out B. act out C. play out D. cry out
5. "How cool!" is used to express
 A. a wish B. a surprise C. an agreement D. an appreciation
6. - "He had to work 12 hours every day."
 - "....."
 A. Sure. B. I wish I could go back to that time.
 B. How cool! D. I can't imagine that.
7. We all it were the weekend tomorrow.
 A. think B. hope C. wish D. want
8. I a teddy bear, but I don't have one now.
 A. used to having B. used to have C. was use to having D. was used to have
9. Minh wishes he English perfectly well.
 A. spoke B. speaks C. is speaking D. has spoken
10. They go on holiday when they lived in the countryside.
 A. not use to B. weren't use to C. didn't use to D. hadn't used to

VI. Fill in each gap in the passage with ONE suitable word.

Cat and Mouse Game

Each game requires between seven and ten people. They stand in a circle, hold hands and (1) their hands above their (2) Then they start singing the song. One person is chosen as the cat and (3) as the mouse.

These two stand in the (4) of the circle and lean against each other. When the others sing the last sentence of the song, the mouse starts to run, and the cat must run (5) it. However, the cat must run in exactly the same route and manner (6) the mouse. The cat (7) the game when it catches the mouse. Then, the two exchange the roles. If the cat runs into the wrong hole, it (8) be dismissed from that round. If it fails to catch the mouse in a certain (9) of time (usually from three to five minutes for kindergarten-age children), it will (10) its role with the mouse.

The game will then continue.

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each blank to complete the passage.

Over the last century, there have been many significant changes in the way we are. Obviously, it is difficult to (1) the life of ancient people and the life of the people living in the twenty-first century because so many changes have occurred. Then the changes that have (2) over the last ten years are amazing.

People in the past were not (3) to travel such long distances within such a short period of time. Nowadays, we have become very mobile. We have fast and (4) cars. In addition, more and more people travel by plane.

Moreover, in the past people had to work harder as they did not have (5) and machines to make their work easier. Today, most of the difficult and dangerous work is (6) by computers and other powerful machines. In the past (7) of living were not as comfortable as they are now. Besides many people could not afford (8) appliances like a fridge or a vacuum cleaner because those used to be luxurious goods. Another difference (9) living now and in the past is the fact that nowadays education is accessible to everyone. In the past men were mainly the only ones educated and women were not (10) into public or private schools.

1. A. predict B. discuss C. compare D. suppose
2. A. occurred B. considered C. expressed D. arranged
3. A. used B. able C. might D. capable
4. A. skillful B. difficult C. historical D. comfortable

5. A. rules B. tools C. teams D. ideas
6. A. thought B. played C. done D. seen
7. A. conditions B. performances C. stories D. conflicts
8. A. mobile B. physical C. bare-footed D. household
9. A. within B. among C. between D. behind
10. A. allowed B. attended C. agreed D. appeared

VIII. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

My grandmother is more than ninety years old, which makes her the oldest person in the whole family. Despite her old age, her memory is still fresh. She always tells us that many things used to be different when she was young.

My grandma used to begin her day very early. She used to start her day at 4 o'clock while everybody else was still in beds. She used to do all the housework by herself. She used to make clothes for her children and as for her outdoor work, she used to raise some chickens and sheep and she also used to help the males to grow vegetables.

There didn't use to be many pastime activities. Her hobby used to be listening to the radio. In the evening all the family used to sit by the fire in the sitting room where all the family gathered at night to tell tales or discuss family matters such as weddings, harvest time or to assign the next day's work.

When a member of the family was ill, she used to show him which herbs to use. She collected them from the near forest or from the mountain. My grandma used to know so many effective methods to cure illnesses.

1. How is the memory of the writer's grandmother?

.....
.....

2. What time did she use to start her day?

.....
.....

3. What did she use to do in her pastimes?

.....
.....

4. Where did her family use to sit in the evening?

.....
...

5. What did she usually do when a member of the family was ill?

.....
.....

IX. Read the text, and identify whether the statements are True (T), False (F), or Not Given (NG).

On September 2, 1945, Viet Nam gained independence from France. President Ho Chi Minh decided that the three key priorities of the new, independent government would be: fighting

against poverty, illiteracy, and invaders. His new driving philosophy for education was “an illiterate nation is a powerless one”, and in October 1945 he issued a “Call for antiilliteracy”. The President’s call was a success. Within one year, 75 thousand literacy classes were established with about 96 thousand teachers to help 2.5 million people learn to read and write.

During the years of French resistance (1946-1954), schools operated in demilitarized areas. They stopped teaching in French and created curriculum in Vietnamese. The government passed an education reform in 1950 with the goal of reducing the years of general education and concentrating on reading, writing, and calculating skills.

- | | T | F | NG |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. One of the priorities was to make sure that people could read and write. | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |
| 2. President Ho Chi Minh thought that an illiterate nation did not have power to gain independence. | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |
| 3. Right before gaining the independence, President Ho Chi Minh called for a struggle against illiteracy. | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |
| 4. The majority of the population could read and write after the campaign anti-illiteracy. | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |
| 5. The education reform reduced the number of subjects. | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |
| 6. It also reduced the years of general education to ten years. | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |
| 7. According to the education reform, general education paid much attention to basic skills. | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |
| 8. During the years of French resistance, schools operated in areas without fighting. | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |

X. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence. Use the word given and other words as necessary. Do not change the form of the given word.

- | | |
|---|------|
| 1. He had a lot of money, but now he doesn't. | USED |
| | |
| | |
| 2. The boys want to win the football match. | WISH |
| | |
| | |
| 3. Did you always eat sweets when you were small? | USE |
| | |
| | |

4. She dreams to spend her vacation in Ha Long Bay.

WISHES

.....

.....

5. They didn't use to drink coffee when we lived in Japan.

NEVER

.....

.....

XI. Use the information below to write two short paragraphs (around 50 words each) about John and Paula. Use 'used to' and 'didn't use to' to talk about their activities in the past.

JOHN

When younger	Now
• Go to school • Play football and tennis • Love sports • Read a lot of books	• Not like reading books • Never play sports (reason: too tired after work)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

PAULA

When younger	Now
--------------	-----

• Live in Spain (was born there) • Have problems speaking English • Stay at home with family at weekends	• Live in Dublin, Ireland • Understand everything people say. • Go out with friends.
--	--

.....
.....

.....
.....

.....
.....

.....
.....

.....
.....

.....
.....

.....

TEST 2 (UNIT 4)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. artic B. occasion C. face D. behave
2. A. event B. vendor C. collet D. gap
3. A. dogsled B. post C. preserve D. strict

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. dogsled B. downtown C. igloo D. fatal
2. A. illiterate B. entertainment C. ability D. especially

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

1. They like playing tug-of-war and cat and mouse game because playing these games with the friends is
A. almost - funny B. almost - fun C. most - fun D. most - funny
2. Traditional games an important role in children's intellectual life.
A. play B. take C. bring D. make
3. Whenever Vietnamese village festivals, you will have a chance to watch a traditional game - human chess - which is the favourite to a great deal of Vietnamese people.
A. participating B. taking place C. taking part D. taking part in
4. Traditional games as an effective but simple educational method for centuries.
A. were used B. used to used C. had used D. have been used
5. Raising roosters for cockfighting heavy investments in time and labour.
A. requests B. requires C. satisfies D. asks
6. The folk of top spinning still attracts city children despite the popularity of modern games such as bowling, skateboarding, billiards and video games.
A. pastime B. ceremony C. activity D. enjoyment
7. Although spinning tops are among the simplest of toys, children it one of the most vivid and exciting games.
A. allow B. let C. make D. keep

8. Women have walked dozens of kilometres to the market twenty- or thirty-kilogram loads in shoulder poles for generations.
- A. carry B. to carry C. to be carried D. carrying
9. Cyclo, a sort of tricycle rickshaw, the most popular means of transport in Viet Nam in the past.
- A. was B. used to C. used to be D. would be
10. We wish LCD projectors still expensive.
- A. haven't been B. are not C. were not D. hadn't been

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

unique	history	characteristics	historical
houses	variety	popular	home

Ha Noi's Old Quarter was established hundreds of years ago on the east side of the ancient Thang Long citadel.

In the old days, the Old Quarter, a system of narrow streets, alleys and houses, was (1) to several guilds such as bronze casting, forging, jewelry making, wood carving, silk and clothes trading. Small, beautifully styled houses built along with a (2) local culture. Streets in the Old Quarter still have names describing their original goods or craft, for example, Hang Bac or "Silver Street". The ground-floor shops of the (3) here now sell handicrafts, fine arts, and food. But the quarter also has a number of pagodas, temples, (4) relics, and festivals dedicated to the founders of some of the local crafts. Now, many guild streets, like Hang Quat street, don't make fans anymore, but they are remembered as craft streets. The architecture and lifestyle of the local people reflect typical (5) of traditional guild streets in Ha Noi.

V. Read the situations and write wishes you want to make for them.

- Many schools are overcrowded because there are so many children in Viet Nam.
I wish
- My school has no playground equipment or extra activities.
I wish
- In the Mekong Delta, small children go through some foot bridges in order to get to school.
I wish
- Kindergarten teachers don't have training courses in making handmade teaching materials.
I wish

5. Children from poor families can't go to school because they have to earn money to support their families.

I wish

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

The Game of Squares

Either boys or girls, usually aged from seven to ten, play the two-person game of "Mandarin's Box". They draw a rectangle on the ground and (1) it into ten small squares called "rice fields" or "fish ponds".

They also draw two additional semi-circular boxes at the two (2) of the rectangle, which are called "mandarin's boxes" - the game's name. Each person has 25 small pebbles and a bigger stone.

Each player places the stone in one of the mandarin's boxes and five small pebbles in each of the other squares. Then the game begins. The first player takes up the contents of one square on his or her side of the board, but not a mandarin's box and distributes the pebbles one by one, (3) the next Square in (4) direction. Since each square contains five pebbles at the beginning, the first move will distribute five pebbles to the left or right.

After the last pebble is distributed, the player takes the contents of the following square and repeats the distribution (5) But if the following square is one of the mandarin's boxes, the turn ends and passes to the other player.

If the last pebble falls into a square that precedes one empty square, the player wins all the contents of the square following the empty square and (6) these pebbles from the board. However, if there are two or more empty squares in a row, the player (7) his or her turn.

Once a player has taken pebbles from the board, the turn is (8) to the other player. If all five squares on one player's side of the board are emptied at any time, that player must place one pebble he or she has aside back in each of the five squares so that the game can resume. The game (9) until the two mandarins' boxes have both been (10) At the end of the game, the player with more pebbles wins, each of the large stones counting as ten points.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------|
| 1. A. share | B. divide | C. separate | D. leave |
| 2. A. ends | B. aims | C. small points | D. stops |
| 3. A. start | B. to start | C. starting | D. having |
| started | | | |

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| 4. A. no | B. all | C. both | D. either |
| 5. A. actions | B. process | C. change | D. method |
| 6. A. removes | B. disappears | C. leaves | D. ends |
| 7. A. wins | B. succeeds | C. fails | D. loses |
| 8. A. gone | B. made | C. passed | D. rewarded |
| 9. A. starts | B. continues | C. stops | D. pauses |
| 10. A. held | B. moved | C. taken | D. accepted |

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Viet Nam's Past Educational System

In comparison with other developing countries, Viet Nam's population enjoys a relatively high standard of education. In the past, Viet Nam's educational system was affected by many cultures, of which the Chinese and French had most significant influence.

The Imperial Academy - the first university in Viet Nam - was built in 1076 under Emperor Ly Nhan Tong for the education of sons of royalty and other high-ranking officials. In 1252, the college was opened to students from various backgrounds besides royal or official ones.

Before the French came, the old-type Mandarin system administered Viet Nam for approximately 2,000 years. As the French took over the government's administration, it was converted from a Confucian system into a Western-oriented one.

In order to participate in the civil service under the French rule, the Vietnamese had to convert to the French system and were required to know the French language. In addition, they had to have a good facility with the new version of their language instead of the traditional Chinese characters which had been in use for hundreds of years.

At the beginning of 1900, the whole system was revised. An educational system of three levels was established: elementary, primary, and secondary education. In addition, the use of the national language (Quoc Ngu) was added to the curriculum. Emphasis was placed on **rote learning**, class discipline and other French educational methods. Several new schools and colleges were established. Accordingly, French became the second language of much importance to the students.

1. In the past, Viet Nam enjoyed a relatively high standard of education with

- A. the effects of the Chinese culture
- B. the reign of Emperor Ly Nhan Tong
- C. the education of sons of royalty
- D. the establishment of the Imperial Academy

2. When the French took control of Vietnamese education, they

- A. made Vietnamese people follow a Western-oriented education B. kept the old-type Mandarin system and the French education C. converted the French System into the Confucian one
- D. took over the government's administration
3. We can infer from the passage that in the French educational system in Viet Nam,
- A. the traditional Chinese characters have been widely used
- B. the Confucian system was banned in the beginning
- C. the national language is the first language and French is the second one
- D. students with different academic levels could attend the Imperial Academy since 1252
4. All of the following are true about the education in Viet Nam under the French rule EXCEPT that
- A. the system had three levels
- B. students only used the national language at home
- C. most students paid much attention to French
- D. several new schools and colleges were established
5. The phrase “**rote learning**” in paragraph 5 is closest in meaning to
- A. learning class discipline
- B. learning the Mandarin Chinese for a while
- C. learning something to repeat it from memory
- D. learning the national language in three education levels

VIII. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. With/ whiteboard/ classroom/ every student/ take part/ lessons.

.....

2. Mistakes/ which/ made/ during guided practice/ easily erased.

.....

3. Nowadays/ smart boards/ provide/ students/ interactive learning environment.

.....

4. Students/ see more diagrams/ charts/ videos/ Internet.

.....

5. Smart boards/ also/ help/ students/ use/ fingers/ write directly/ them.

.....

TEST 3 (UNIT 4)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. sn <u>a</u> ck | B. illit <u>e</u> rate | C. <u>a</u> ctivity | D. h <u>a</u> bit |
| 2. A. fr <u>e</u> sh | B. sp <u>e</u> cific | C. <u>e</u> ntertain | D. pr <u>e</u> servation |
| 3. A. <u>s</u> eniority | B. <u>s</u> ee <u>k</u> | C. w <u>e</u> st | D. ph <u>y</u> sical |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. facility | B. traditional | C. historical | D. television |
| 2. A. tuberculosis | B. seniority | C. possibility | D. technological |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

1. Despite changes brought on by industrialisation and modernisation, shoulder poles the main carriers of 80 percent of the rural population.
A. continue B. exist C. stay D. remain
2. The image of an old lady with the traditional **áo dài** on a rickshaw on her way back from the market is still so for Vietnamese people.
A. meaning B. meaningful C. meaningless D. meaningfulness
3. Furthermore, traditional help to develop their senses, memory, thoughts, imagination, linguistic capacity and basic concepts about the national culture.
A. habits B. games C. customs D. practices
4. Working as street vendors has created countless jobs, and it has become in Ha Noi.
A. part of life B. parts of life C. part of lives D. life parts
5. “Quang ganh” is two baskets hung from either end of a bamboo pole the shoulders.
A. across B. at C. on D. above
6. Viet Nam’s tug-of-war game was also as a UNESCO cultural intangible heritage of humanity in December 2015.
A. realised B. recognised C. allowed D. seen
7. People in Bac Ninh province believe that if the tug-of-war team facing the east wins, it will bring bumper crops and good luck, and that the situation will be just the if the team facing the west wins.
A. different B. same C. other D. opposite
8. The first university that the western educational system was built in Ha Noi, in 1919 with the medicine school and 1933 with the law school.

A. requested B. applied C. applied to D. related

9. In the past, white, or violet ao dai by Vietnamese female students as their uniforms.

A. wore B. used to wear C. was worn D. would be wear

10. We all wish there a smart board in our classroom.

A. is B. was C. has been D. had been

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

academically	scholarly	exhibition show	tradition
symbolic	features		occasion

Through centuries, one of the most (1) elements of a Vietnamese village has been its gate. However, the image is fast disappearing due to rapid urbanisation. One way of keeping the image alive is via photography. A(n) (2) entitled “Old Gates” consisted of nearly 700 photos taken of typical village gates in northern Viet Nam, which opened in Ha Noi on the (3) of the National Cultural Heritage Day. Villages in the north usually have a main gate and one leading to the rice fields alongside minor gates. Many have disappeared forever. Gates differ depending on typical village (4) A major trading village such as Cu Da in Ha Noi would have a sizeable gate while more (5) villages would have their gates engraved and decorated.

V. Read the situations and write wishes you want to make for them.

1. The school authorities can't set holidays based on local weather conditions.

I wish

2. That university often doesn't attract enough enrolments for the new school year.

I wish

3. We can't study the books written by famous scholars in the Ly and Tran dynasties because Chinese Ming aggressors took them to China.

I wish

4. Many small children don't learn how to swim so they often suffer-from drowning.

I wish

5. Many graduates from colleges don't have enough skills to meet the requirements of their jobs.

I wish

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits each blank space in the following passage.

Rickshaw in Vietnamese Life

It is just simple and ordinary as its (1) No noisy sound from engines, no obscure smoke and no spending too much for commuting. From a long time ago, Vietnamese people have thought of the rickshaw as a (2) means of transportation when going out. It is not only close-knit to Vietnamese but also connected strongly with the foreigners (3) all of them were attracted by this unique means at the first time visiting Viet Nam.

The rickshaw has existed for a long time in Vietnamese life, and become quite necessary as the (4) in a body. Not only the Vietnamese feel (5) to rickshaw, foreigners are also impressed by this unique vehicle. They will be fond of sitting on the rickshaw for a (6) tour around Sword Lake or around on the streets to (7) dreamy and peaceful photos in the ancient citadel.

Traveling in a rickshaw is the time for peacefully (8) windy sunset and bright sunrises on the beach of Nha Trang or Da Nang or elsewhere. How pleasant it is for you to enjoy a relaxing feeling on the short (9) trip.

Viet Nam is becoming more and more modern; however, rickshaw still (10) through the time and has a stand in the minds of the residents.

1. A. presence B. appearance C. judgment D. performance
2. A. shared B. recognized C. friendly D. familiar
3. A. although B. as C. but D. while
4. A. breath B. air C. rest D. recovery
5. A. close B. closed C. closest D. closing
6. A. sight B. sighting C. sightseeing D. sightseer
7. A. catch B. take C. bring D. keep
8. A. welcome B. welcoming C. welcomed D. being welcomed
9. A. city B. town C. urban D. field
10. A. keeps B. continues C. lives D. survives

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to each question.

For formal ceremonies, men would have two additional items, a long gown with slits on either side, and a turban, usually in black or brown made of cotton or silk. In feudal times, there were strict dress codes. Ordinary people were not allowed to wear clothes with dyes rather than black, brown or white. Costumes in yellow were reserved for the King. Those in purple and red were reserved for high - ranking court officials, while dresses in blue were exclusively worn by petty court officials. Men's dress has gradually changed along with social development.

The traditional set of a long gown and turban gave way to more modern-looking suits, while business shirts and trousers have replaced traditional long sleeved shirts and wide trousers. Traditional costumes still exist and efforts are increasingly being made to restore traditional festivals and entertainment which incorporate traditional costumes.

For women, the outer garment is a special silk gown called an “ao tu than” which is brown or light brown in colour with four slits divided equally on its lower section. The second layer is a gown in a light yellow colour and the third layer is a pink gown. When a woman wears her three gowns, she fastens the buttons on the side, and leave those on the chest unfastened so that it forms a shaped collar. This allows her to show the different colors on the upper part of the three gowns. Today, on formal occasions women wear “ao dai”.

1. In the past, the colour was used to represent
 - A. the difference between men and women
 - B. formal ceremonies
 - C. the social development
 - D. the rank in the society
2. In the past, for formal ceremonies men wore
 - A. costumes in purple or yellow not like the King
 - B. a long gown and a turban in black or brown
 - C. costumes made of red cotton or silk
 - D. dresses in blue as petty court officials
3. Traditional festivals
 - A. promote traditional costumes
 - B. encourage modern-looking suits
 - C. replace traditional suits by business ones
 - D. make men's dresses change
4. All of the following are true about women's traditional costumes EXCEPT that
 - A. the gowns have different colours on the upper part
 - B. we can see a shaped collar in the front
 - C. the two inner gowns cannot be seen
 - D. the outer gown has four equal parts on its lower section
5. The word “**gown**” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to
 - A. a long dress worn on formal occasions
 - B. a woman's dress, especially a long one
 - C. a long piece of clothing worn by judges
 - D. a piece of clothing that is worn over other clothes to protect them

VIII. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. traditional library/ function/ storage/ preservation/ physical items/ particularly books/ periodicals.

.....
...

2. Books/ shelves/ divided/ based/ subjects/ and/ readers/ travel/ library/ borrow books.

.....
.....

3. For/ digital library/ readers/ get/ access/ materials/ house/ Internet.

.....
...

4. Readers/ browse/ materials/ based/ hyperlinks/ or keywords.

.....
...

5. With/ digital library/ we/ read/ all the books/ which/ published/ world.

.....
...

ANSWER KEYS (UNIT 4)

LIFE IN THE PAST

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

Act out (v)	/ækt aʊt/	Đóng vai, diễn	Occasion (n)	/ə'keɪʒn/	Dịp
Arctic (adj)	/'ɑːktɪk/	(thuộc về) Bắc cực	Pass on (ph.v)	/pɑːs ɒn/	Truyền lại, kể lại
Bare-footed (adj)	/'beəfʊtɪd/	Chân đất	Post (v)	/pəʊst/	Đăng tải
Behave (v) (+oneself)	/bɪ'heɪv/	Ngoan, biết cư xử	Snack (n)	/snæk/	Đồ ăn vặt
Dogsled (n)	/'dɒɡsled/	Xe chó kéo	Street vendor (n)	/stri:t 'vendə(r)/	Người bán hàng rong
Domed (adj)	/dəʊmd/	Hình vòm	Strict (adj)	/strikt/	Nghiêm khắc
Downtown (adv)	/ˌdaʊn'taʊn/	Vào trung tâm thành phố	Treat (v)	/tri:t/	Cư xử
Eat out (v)	/i:t aʊt/	Ăn ngoài	Tradition (n)	/trə'dɪʃn/	Truyền thống
Entertain (v)	/ˌentə'teɪn/	Giải trí	Generation (n)	/ˌdʒenə'reɪʃn/	Thế hệ
Event (n)	/ɪ'vent/	Sự kiện	Feather (n)	/'feðə(r)/	Lông chim
Face to face (adv)	/feɪs tu feɪs/	Trực diện, mặt đối mặt	Custom (n)	/'kʌstəm/	Phong tục
Facility (n)	/fə'sɪləti/	Phương tiện, tiện nghi	Funeral (n)	/'fjuːnərəl/	Đám tang

Igloo (n)	/ˈɪɡluː/	Lều tuyết	Bride (n)	/braɪd/	Cô dâu
Illiterate (adj)	/ɪˈlɪtərət/	Thất học	Groom (n)	/ɡruːm/	Chú rể
Loudspeaker (n)	/ˌlaʊdˈspiːkə(r)/	Loa	Attendant (n)	/əˈtendənt/	Người phục vụ, người tham gia
Preserve (v)	/prɪˈzɜːv/	Bảo quản, bảo tồn	Tug of war	/tʌɡ əv wɔː(r)/	Trò kéo co
Seniority (n)	/ˌsiːniːɔːrəti/	Thâm niên	Punishment (n)	/ˈpʌnɪʃmənt/	Sự trừng phạt
Extend (v)	/ɪkˈstend/	Mở rộng	Dye (v)	/daɪ/	Nhuộm
Tuberculosis (n)	/tjuːˌbɜːkjuːˈləʊsɪs/	Bệnh lao	Fatal (adj)	/ˈfɜːtl/	Tai hại, chết người
Barber (n)	/ˈbɑːbə(r)/	Thợ cắt tóc	Bushwalking (n)		Cuộc đi bộ nơi hoang dã
Obesity (n)	/əʊˈbiːsəti/	Sự béo phì			

II. Grammar:

Wishes for the present

1. Wishes for the present or future:

S1 + wish/ wishes + S2 + V (past simple)

E.g: *I wish my friends **spent** less time playing computer games and more time outdoors.*

2. Wishes for something that we want to be happening right at this moment.

S1 + wish/ wishes + S2 + V (past continuous)

E.g: *My son wishes he **were studying** Marketing instead of Hospitality.*

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. vulnerable | B. satellite | C. eleven | D. element |
| 2. A. character | B. publisher | C. wonderful | D. understand |
| 3. A. interesting | B. surprising | C. amusing | D. successful |
| 4. A. arctic | B. behave | C. event | D. facility |
| 5. A. illiterate | B. occasion | C. relaxed | D. sculpture |

II. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

1. **A. women** B. bench C. lend D. spend
2. **A. brain** B. lamb C. comb D. climb
3. A. phoned B. called **C. cooked** D. climbed
4. A. surface B. necklace C. face **D. palace**
5. A. chew **B. news** C. crew D. screw

III. Complete the sentence using “wish”.

1. He is very short. He **wishes** he **were** taller.
2. They don't have a car. They **wish** they **had** a car.
3. He doesn't have any children. He ... **wishes** he **had** a child.
4. He is overweight. He **wishes** he **were** thinner.
5. I can't play the piano. I **wish** I **could** play the piano.

IV. Complete with the right words given in the box. You can use the words more than once, there are some extra.

play	dance	be	use	have
go	spend	jump	ride	collect

1. She used to **play** with dolls when she was a child.
2. They didn't use to **play** any sports.
3. He didn't use to **have** a scrapbook.
4. When they were younger, they used to **go** to the beach, ride a bike and collect comics.
5. I used to **be** very shy, but I am not anymore.
6. After school, my friend and I used to **play** chess and hide-and-seek.
7. I used to **spend** my vacation in a summer camp with my friends.
8. I used to **have** a pet when I was 5 years old. Now I don't have it anymore.

V. Give the right tense of the verbs given and then fill in each space to complete the sentence.

1. I don't know where my wallet is. I wish I**knew**..... where my wallet was. **(know)**
2. Michael is in the park playing with the older boys. I wish Michael**weren't playing**..... with them. **(play)**
3. Things are not good in the country. I hope everything**will get**..... better. **(get)**
4. I am tired of hearing your screaming. It is time you**stopped**..... screaming in my ear! **(stop)**
5. I can't go to the pool with my friends because I can't swim. Oh, I wish I**could swim**..... **(swim)**
6. Veronica doesn't like calling boys. I really wish she**could call**..... me. I want to go out with her. **(call)**
7. David and Christian are at the cinema right now. I hope they**will enjoy**..... themselves, **(enjoy)**
8. You are a great guy Jimmy, but I don't love you. I wish I**loved**..... you. **(love)**
9. This party is so boring and Gina is not coming. It is time I**left**..... I'm tired of being here. **(leave)**
10. Tommy is a great piano player. I wish I**could play**..... the piano just like him. **(play)**

VI. Read the passage and answer what Molly Hornby used to do when she was young. Decide which ones are right or wrong.

"I was a young girl in the 1960s. My friends and I used to do a lot of things which shocked our parents. We used to do things our mothers never did. We cut our hair, we wore short skirts, we smoked, and went dancing. We danced to the music of Elvis Presley and the Beatles. We also got the chance to see the Beatles live at a concert once. It was amazing. My father went fishing once a week. He always wished that I would accompany him, but fishing was not my cup of tea. Instead my friends and I went for picnics in the surrounding area quite often. My boyfriend had a car, a 1960 Ford Falcon, so he always picked us up and we often drove to Brighton. We went to the pictures twice a week and I loved to watch films with Marlon Brando and Elizabeth Taylor, especially the 'Reflections in a Golden Eye' starring both of them. I still love to watch this film. It's my favourite. I can remember it all so clearly."

	Right	Wrong
--	--------------	--------------

Molly Hornby...		
1....used to do a lot of things which shocked her parents.		
2...used to cut her hair.	R	
3....used to wear long skirts.	R	
4....used to sing Elvis Presley's songs.		W
5...went to a Beatles' concert once.		W
6....used to go fishing with her father.	R	
7...used to go for picnics in the surrounding area quite often.		W
8...used to drive to Brighton with her friends and boyfriend.	R	
9...used to go to the pictures twice a week.	R	
10...used to watch films with Marlon Brando and Elizabeth Taylor.	R	
		W

VII. Complete the passage with the words provided in the box.

live	space	signals	poor	events	radio
until	transmitted	expensive	landing	one	use

All early television was broadcast in black and white. Colour television was possible, but it was too (1) **expensive** and of very (2) **poor** quality (3) ... **until** the middle of the 1950s. Colour television broadcasts began in the United States in 1954, in Japan in 1960 and in Europe in 1967.

The first (4) **landing** on the moon was broadcast (5) **live** on television in 1969, and now television programs are (6) ... **transmitted** all over the world immediately through the (7) **use** of satellites that transmit the (8) **signals** from the earth, through the (9) **space** and back to the earth.

More people now get their news and information through television than through newspapers and (10) **radio** The development of television is (11) **one** of the most rapid and exciting (12) **events** of our century.

VIII. Choose the best options A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

It's hard to believe that (1) had computers a few years ago. I wonder how people lived. There must have been a lot of (2)

I can't imagine writing everything by hand. I also wonder how everything worked (3) computers. We need computers today for everything. Hospitals, airports, the police, etc. nothing can work without computers. I'm sure I'd be ten times busier than now if I didn't have a computer. Imagine having to find (4) paper and an envelope and then walking down the street to mail a letter! I love my computer. It makes everything in my life so (5) Sure, it freezes and crashes sometimes. Sure I lose some data. But that's not often. Most of the time my computer is like my best friend.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. no one | B. any one | C. someone | D. no body |
| 2. A. paperworks | B. work paper | C. paperwork | D. paper work |
| 3. A. with | B. without | C. by | D. in |
| 4. A. pieces of | B. a piece | C. piece of | D. a piece of |
| 5. A. convenient | B. convenience | C. inconvenient | D. inconvenience |

IX. There are 5 mistakes in this passage. Find out and correct them.

	Your corrections
My favourite subjects at school was history. I don't know why. I loved reading the story about famous people and famous events. When I was little, history was just stories. As I got old, I realized history is the study of how we got here today. It's a long journey that describes all the wars, great people, inventions, disasters, etc. that have bring us to this point in time. I now love any kind of history. It's fascinating to visit a new country and learn about its historical. Watching the news today is like seeing history unfold. Lots of the things I learnt at school now make the news more interesting. History provides us with the perfect background information to a news story.	1. subject ... 2. stories 3. older 4. brought 5. history

X. Write full sentences to make a passage, using the suggested words and phrases given.

1. I/ grow up/ small/ town/ northeast/ England/./

I grew up in a small town in the northeast of England.

2. It / the coast / , / next / sea / . / And / now / I / live / London / , / which / much / big / place / compare / to where / I / grew up / ./

It was by the coast, next to the sea. And now I live in London, which is a much, much bigger place compared to where I grew up.

3. When / I / child / , / I / use / walk / everywhere / . / The / town / small / that / you / could / walk / one side / other / and / you / never / really / need / car / . /

When I was a child, I used to walk everywhere. The town was so small that you could walk from one side to the other and you never really needed a car.

4. When / I / young / , / , / mealtimes / use / quite predictable / . / And / we'd / eat / similar / foods / every day / , / consist / meat / , / potatoes / , / root vegetables / , / whatever / season / time / . /

When I was young, mealtimes used to be quite predictable. And we'd eat similar foods every day, consisting of meat, potatoes, root vegetables, whatever was in season at the time.

5. We / never / used / have / very / varied meals / , / whereas / now / my diet / change / a lot / . / **We never used to have very varied meals, whereas now my diet's changed a lot.**

6. I / not / eat / meat / anymore / . / **I don't eat meat anymore.**

7. I / have / diet / that's all / vegetables / and / fruit / . / **I have a diet that's all about vegetables and fruit.**

8. I / more / adventure / what / I / eat / now / than / what / I / do / when / I / child / . / **I'm more adventurous in what I eat now than what I did when I was a child.**

XI. Write down at least five things you would change about your home if you were your father.

Example: If I were my father, I would let my son go to school by bicycle himself.

1.
...
2.
...
3.
...
4.
...
5.
...

TEST 1 (UNIT 4)

I. Choose a word in each line that has a different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. A. surprise | | | B. event |
| C. behave | B. | | D. damage |
| 2. A. develop | understand | C. imagine | D. consider |
| 3. A. illiterate | B. communicate | C. entertainment | D. |
| traditional | | | |
| A. | | | 4. A. |
| importance | B. violence | C. buffalo | programm |
| | | | e B. |
| | | | downtown |
| | | | C. |
| postman | D. custom | | |

5.

II. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct verb/verb phrase from the box with the correct verb form.

<i>transfer</i>	<i>warm up</i>	<i>lose</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>fail</i>	<i>toss</i>	<i>create</i>
<i>pick up</i>					<i>gather</i>	<i>catch</i>

Bamboo jacks, a girls' game, includes ten thin, round bamboo sticks and a small tennis ball. The player (1) the ball into the air. While the ball is in the air, she must quickly pick up the sticks and then (2) the ball. In the first round, the the sticks one by one. Next, she (4) player (3)two sticks at a time, and so forth up to ten. In these stages she plays with only one hand.

The peak of the game is the last, most animated stage with all ten sticks in a bundle.

During this stage, the player tosses the ball and then (5) the pack of sticks from one hand to the other. If a player's hands are not swift or if her eyes are not sharp, or if she

(6)her turn.

..... to coordinate the two, she will (7)
.....

Playing bamboo jacks (8) ...a lot of fun. During summer or the body and (9) autumn, small girls (10) creates.....

...play..... it everywhere, from the shade of a village banyan tree to a deserted market stall.

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences. 1.

You have to use your **imagination**..... when you read the story.

IMAGINE

2. I think corporal **punishment**..... is now prohibited in schools.

PUNISH

3. ...**Traditionally**....., we used to cook five-colour sticky rice on the

TRADITION

first day of the lunar month.

4. Tom says he can't put up with Mary's**behaviour**..... any longer.

attendants..... over there are friends of both the bride and **BEHAVE**

5. Those ...

groom.

ATTEND

6. The photo brought back many happy memories of my

.....**childhood**.....

7. I think riding a bicycle is**inconvenient**..... especially when it rains. **CHILD**

8. She said that in her village**marriages**..... used to be arranged by

parents.

CONVENIENC

E

9. Thirty years ago only**wealthy**..... people in the city had the television.

10. We used to ...**think**..... of our home village when we lived

MARRY

overseas.

WEALTH

THOUGHT

IV. Complete each of the following sentences with used to/ didn't use to using the verbs from the box.

be	buy	climb	play	shop
swim	travel	walk	watch	write

1. In my childhood, there**didn't use to be**..... so many high buildings here. There were parks.

2. People**used to write**..... with pens, but now they use computers.

3. My brother**used to play**..... football, but an injury stopped him from playing.

4. In my grandfather's youth, people**didn't use to travel**..... by car. They rode horses.

5. I **used to walk** to school, but two weeks ago I got a bike so now I ride it every day.
6. My sister **didn't use to swim** when we go to the beach because she was afraid of water.
7. Mr. Lam **didn't use to watch** television in the morning. He did it in the evening.
8. David was a good climber in his youth. He ... **used to climb** very high mountains.
9. My parents **didn't use to buy** me expensive toys as we were not rich.
10. We **used to shop** in the town market. We bought fish, fruit and vegetables.

V. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. Many children in our village are still They can't read or write.

A. creative **B. illiterate** C. unhealthy D. traditional

2. We usually ourselves by playing hike and seek or flying kites.

A. behave B. collect C. imagine **D. entertain**

3. Laura is in the of writing in her dairy every day.

A. habit B. custom C. practice D. generation

4. The children started to each part of the story.

A. go out **B. act out** C. play out D. cry out

5. "How cool!" is used to express

.....

A. a wish B. a surprise C. an agreement **D. an appreciation**

6. - "He had to work 12 hours every day."

- "....."

A. Sure. B. I wish I could go back to that time.
B. How cool! D. I can't imagine that.

7. We all it were the weekend tomorrow.

A. think B. hope **C. wish** D. want

8. I a teddy bear, but I don't have one now.

A. used to having **B. used to have** C. was use to having D. was used to have

9. Minh wishes he English perfectly well.

A. spoke B. speaks C. is speaking D. has spoken

10. They go on holiday when they lived in the countryside.

A. not use to B. weren't use to **C. didn't use to** D. hadn't used to

VI. Fill in each gap in the passage with ONE suitable word.

Cat and Mouse Game

Each game requires between seven and ten people. They stand in a circle, hold hands and (1) Then they start singing the song. One person is chosen as the cat mouse. These two stand in the (4) of the circle and lean against each other. When the others sing the last sentence of the song, the mouse starts to run, and the cat must run (5) it. However, the cat must run in exactly the same route and manner (6) the game when it catches the mouse. The cat (7) wins If the cat runs into the wrong hole, it (8) be dismissed from that round. If it fails to catch the mouse in a of time (usually from three to five minutes for kindergarten- certain (9) children), it will (10) its role with the mouse. The game will continue. then

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each blank to complete the passage.

Over the last century, there have been many significant changes in the way we are. Obviously, it is difficult to (1) the life of ancient people and the life of the people living in the twenty-first century because so many changes have occurred. Then the changes that have (2) over the last ten years are amazing.

People in the past were not (3) to travel such long distances within such a short period of time. Nowadays, we have become very mobile. We have fast and (4) cars. In addition, more and more people travel by plane.

Moreover, in the past people had to work harder as they did not have (5) and machines to make their work easier. Today, most of the difficult and dangerous work is (6) by computers and other powerful machines. In the past (7) of living were not as comfortable as they are now. Besides many people could not afford (8) appliances like a fridge or a vacuum cleaner because those used to be luxurious goods. Another difference (9) living now and in the past is the fact that nowadays education is accessible to everyone. In the past men were mainly the only ones educated and women were not (10) into public or private schools.

1. A. predict B. discuss **C. compare** D. suppose
2. **A. occurred** B. considered C. expressed D. arranged
3. A. used **B. able** C. might D. capable
4. A. skillful B. difficult C. historical **D. comfortable**
5. A. rules **B. tools** C. teams D. ideas
6. A. thought B. played **C. done** D. seen
7. **A. conditions** B. performances C. stories D. conflicts
8. A. mobile B. physical C. bare-footed **D. household**
9. A. within B. among **C. between** D. behind
10. **A. allowed** B. attended C. agreed D. appeared

VIII. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

My grandmother is more than ninety years old, which makes her the oldest person in the whole family. Despite her old age, her memory is still fresh. She always tells us that many things used to be different when she was young.

My grandma used to begin her day very early. She used to start her day at 4 o'clock while everybody else was still in beds. She used to do all the housework by herself. She used to make clothes for her children and as for her outdoor work, she used to raise some chickens and sheep and she also used to help the males to grow vegetables.

There didn't use to be many pastime activities. Her hobby used to be listening to the radio. In the evening all the family used to sit by the fire in the sitting room where all the family gathered at night to tell tales or discuss family matters such as weddings, harvest time or to assign the next day's work.

When a member of the family was ill, she used to show him which herbs to use. She collected them from the near forest or from the mountain. My grandma used to know so many effective methods to cure illnesses.

1. How is the memory of the writer's grandmother?

.....**It is still fresh.**

2. What time did she use to start her day?

.....**She used to start her day at 4 o'clock.**

3. What did she use to do in her pastimes?

.....**She used to listen to the radio.**

4. Where did her family use to sit in the evening?

.....**They used to sit by the fire in the sitting room**

5. What did she usually do when a member of the family was ill?

.....**She usually showed him which herbs to use to cure the illness.**

IX. Read the text, and identify whether the statements are True (T), False (F), or Not Given (NG). On September 2, 1945, Viet Nam gained independence from France. President Ho Chi Minh decided that the three key priorities of the new, independent government would be: fighting against poverty, illiteracy, and invaders. His new driving philosophy for education was “an illiterate nation is a powerless one”, and in October 1945 he issued a “Call for antiilliteracy”. The President’s call was a success. Within one year, 75 thousand literacy classes were established with about 96 thousand teachers to help 2.5 million people learn to read and write.

During the years of French resistance (1946-1954), schools operated in demilitarized areas. They stopped teaching in French and created curriculum in Vietnamese. The government passed an education reform in 1950 with the goal of reducing the years of general education and concentrating on reading, writing, and calculating skills.

T F NG

1. One of the priorities was to make sure that people could read and write. ☒ ☐ ☐
2. President Ho Chi Minh thought that an illiterate nation did not have ☒ ☐ ☐
power to gain independence.
3. Right before gaining the independence, President Ho Chi Minh called ☐ ☒ ☐
for a struggle against illiteracy.
4. The majority of the population could read and write after the campaign ☐ ☒
of anti-illiteracy. ☐ ☒ ☐
5. The education reform reduced the number of subjects. ☐ ☐ ☒
6. It also reduced the years of general education to ten years. ☐ ☐ ☐
7. According to the education reform, general education paid much ☒ attention to basic skills. ☐ ☐
8. During the years of French resistance, schools operated in areas ☒
without fighting.

X. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence. Use the word given and other words as necessary. Do not change the form of the given word.

1. He had a lot of money, but now he doesn't. USED

..... **He used to have a lot of money, but now he doesn't.**
.....

2. The boys want to win the football match. WISH

.....The boys wish they won the football match.....

3. Did you always eat sweets when you were small? USE

..... **Did you use to eat sweets when you were small.....**
.....

4. She dreams to spend her vacation in Ha Long Bay. WISHES

..... **She wishes she spent her vacation in Ha Long Bay.....**

5. They didn't use to drink coffee when we lived in Japan.

NEVER

... **They never used to drink coffee when they lived in Japan.**
.....

XI. Use the information below to write two short paragraphs (around 50 words each) about John and Paula. Use 'used to' and 'didn't use to' to talk about their activities in the past.

JOHN

When younger	Now
• Go to school • Play football and tennis • Love sports • Read a lot of books	• Not like reading books • Never play sports (reason: too tired after work)

I'm John. When I was younger I used to go to school. I used to play football and tennis. I loved sports. I also used to read a lot of books. Now, I don't like reading books and I never play sports. I'm too tired after work! (47 words)

PAULA

When younger	Now
• Live in Spain (was born there) • Have problems speaking English • Stay at home with family at weekends	• Live in Dublin, Ireland • Understand everything people say. • Go out with friends.

When I was younger I used to live in Spain, that's where I was born. Now I live in Dublin, Ireland. I used to have problems speaking English, but now I understand everything people say to me. At weekends I used to stay at home with my family, but now I often go out with my friends. (57 words)

TEST 2 (UNIT 4)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. **A. artic** B. occasion C. face D. behave
2. A. event B. vendor C. collect **D. gap**
3. A. dogsled B. post **C. preserve** D. strict

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. dogsled **B. downtown** C. igloo D. fatal
2. A. illiterate **B. entertainment** C. ability D. especially

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

1. They like playing tug-of-war and cat and mouse game because playing these games with the friends is
A. almost - funny B. almost - fun **C. most - fun** D. most - funny
2. Traditional games an important role in children's intellectual life.
A. **play** B. take C. bring D. make
3. Whenever Vietnamese village festivals, you will have a chance to watch a traditional game - human chess - which is the favourite to a great deal of Vietnamese people.
A. participating B. taking place C. taking part **D. taking part in**
4. Traditional games as an effective but simple educational method for centuries.
A. were used B. used to used C. had used **D. have been used**
5. Raising roosters for cockfighting heavy investments in time and labour.
A. requests **B. requires** C. satisfies D. asks
6. The folk of top spinning still attracts city children despite the popularity of modern games such as bowling, skateboarding, billiards and video games.
A. **pastime** B. ceremony C. activity D. enjoyment
7. Although spinning tops are among the simplest of toys, children it one of the most vivid and exciting games.
A. allow B. let **C. make** D. keep

8. Women have walked dozens of kilometres to the market twenty- or thirty-kilogram loads in shoulder poles for generations.
- A. carry B. to carry C. to be carried **D. carrying**
9. Cyclo, a sort of tricycle rickshaw, the most popular means of transport in Viet Nam in the past.
- A. **was** B. used to C. used to be D. would be
10. We wish LCD projectors still expensive.
- A. haven't been B. are not **C. were not** D. hadn't been

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

unique	history	characteristics	historical
houses	variety	popular	home

Ha Noi's Old Quarter was established hundreds of years ago on the east side of the ancient Thang Long citadel.

In the old days, the Old Quarter, a system of narrow streets, alleys and houses, was (1) ... **home** to several guilds such as bronze casting, forging, jewelry making, wood carving, silk and clothes trading. Small, beautifully styled houses built along with a (2) ... **unique** local culture. Streets in the Old Quarter still have names describing their original goods or craft, for example, Hang Bac or "Silver Street". The ground-floor shops of the (3) ... **houses** here now sell handicrafts, fine arts, and food. But the quarter also has a number of pagodas, temples, (4) ... **historical** relics, and festivals dedicated to the founders of some of the local crafts. Now, many guild streets, like Hang Quat street, don't make fans anymore, but they are remembered as craft streets. The architecture and lifestyle of the local people reflect typical (5) ... **characteristics** of traditional guild streets in Ha Noi.

V. Read the situations and write wishes you want to make for them.

- Many schools are overcrowded because there are so many children in Viet Nam.
I wish ... **schools weren't crowded**
- My school has no playground equipment or extra activities.
I wish **my school had playground equipment or extra activities**
- In the Mekong Delta, small children go through some foot bridges in order to get to school.
I wish **small children in the Mekong Delta didn't go through some foot bridges in order to get to school**
- Kindergarten teachers don't have training courses in making handmade teaching materials.

I wish**kindergarten** **had** **training** **courses in** **making handmade**
teaching materials.....

5. Children from poor families can't go to school because they have to earn money to support their families.

I wish ... **children from poor families could go to school.**

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

The Game of Squares

Either boys or girls, usually aged from seven to ten, play the two-person game of "Mandarin's Box". They draw a rectangle on the ground and (1) it into ten small squares called "rice fields" or "fish ponds".

They also draw two additional semi-circular boxes at the two (2) of the rectangle, which are called "mandarin's boxes" - the game's name. Each person has 25 small pebbles and a bigger stone.

Each player places the stone in one of the mandarin's boxes and five small pebbles in each of the other squares. Then the game begins. The first player takes up the contents of one square on his or her side of the board, but not a mandarin's box and distributes the pebbles one by one, (3) the next Square in (4) direction. Since each square contains five pebbles at the beginning, the first move will distribute five pebbles to the left or right.

After the last pebble is distributed, the player takes the contents of the following square and repeats the distribution (5) But if the following square is one of the mandarin's boxes, the turn ends and passes to the other player.

If the last pebble falls into a square that precedes one empty square, the player wins all the contents of the square following the empty square and (6) these pebbles from the board. However, if there are two or more empty squares in a row, the player (7) his or her turn.

Once a player has taken pebbles from the board, the turn is (8) to the other player. If all five squares on one player's side of the board are emptied at any time, that player must place one pebble he or she has aside back in each of the five squares so that the game can resume. The game (9) until the two mandarins' boxes have both been (10) At the end of the game, the player with more pebbles wins, each of the large stones counting as ten points.

1. A. share **B. divide** C. separate D. leave

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 2. A. ends | B. aims | C. small points | D. stops |
| 3. A. start
started | B. to start | C. starting | D. having |
| 4. A. no | B. all | C. both | D. either |
| 5. A. actions | B. process | C. change | D. method |
| 6. A. removes | B. disappears | C. leaves | D. ends |
| 7. A. wins | B. succeeds | C. fails | D. loses |
| 8. A. gone | B. made | C. passed | D. rewarded |
| 9. A. starts | B. continues | C. stops | D. pauses |
| 10. A. held | B. moved | C. taken | D. accepted |

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Viet Nam's Past Educational System

In comparison with other developing countries, Viet Nam's population enjoys a relatively high standard of education. In the past, Viet Nam's educational system was affected by many cultures, of which the Chinese and French had most significant influence.

The Imperial Academy - the first university in Viet Nam - was built in 1076 under Emperor Ly Nhan Tong for the education of sons of royalty and other high-ranking officials. In 1252, the college was opened to students from various backgrounds besides royal or official ones.

Before the French came, the old-type Mandarin system administered Viet Nam for approximately 2,000 years. As the French took over the government's administration, it was converted from a Confucian system into a Western-oriented one.

In order to participate in the civil service under the French rule, the Vietnamese had to convert to the French system and were required to know the French language. In addition, they had to have a good facility with the new version of their language instead of the traditional Chinese characters which had been in use for hundreds of years.

At the beginning of 1900, the whole system was revised. An educational system of three levels was established: elementary, primary, and secondary education. In addition, the use of the national language (Quoc Ngu) was added to the curriculum. Emphasis was placed on **rote learning**, class discipline and other French educational methods. Several new schools and colleges were established. Accordingly, French became the second language of much importance to the students.

1. In the past, Viet Nam enjoyed a relatively high standard of education with

- A. the effects of the Chinese culture
- B. the reign of Emperor Ly Nhan Tong
- C. the education of sons of royalty
- D. **the establishment of the Imperial Academy**

2. When the French took control of Vietnamese education, they **A. made Vietnamese people follow a Western-oriented education**
- B. kept the old-type Mandarin system and the French education C. converted the French System into the Confucian one
- D. took over the government's administration
3. We can infer from the passage that in the French educational system in Viet Nam,
- A. the traditional Chinese characters have been widely used
- B. the Confucian system was banned in the beginning
- C. **the national language is the first language and French is the second one**
- D. students with different academic levels could attend the Imperial Academy since 1252
4. All of the following are true about the education in Viet Nam under the French rule EXCEPT that
- A. the system had three levels
- B. **students only used the national language at home**
- C. most students paid much attention to French
- D. several new schools and colleges were established
5. The phrase “rote learning” in paragraph 5 is closest in meaning to
- A. learning class discipline
- B. learning the Mandarin Chinese for a while
- C. **learning something to repeat it from memory**
- D. learning the national language in three education levels

VIII. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. With/ whiteboard/ classroom/ every student/ take part/ lessons.

With a whiteboard in the classroom, every student can take part in the lessons.

2. Mistakes/ which/ made/ during guided practice/ easily erased.

Mistakes which are made during guided practice can be easily erased.

3. Nowadays/ smart boards/ provide/ students/ interactive learning environment.

Nowadays, smart boards provide students with an interactive learning environment.

4. Students/ see more diagrams/ charts/ videos/ Internet.

Students can see more diagrams, charts, videos from the Internet.

5. Smart boards/ also/ help/ students/ use/ fingers/ write directly/ them.

Smart boards also help students to use their fingers to write directly on them.

TEST 3 (UNIT 4)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. A. snack | B. illiterate | C. <u>a</u> ctivity | D. ha <u>b</u> it |
| 2. A. f <u>r</u> esh | B. sp<u>e</u>cific | C. <u>e</u> ntertain | D. p <u>r</u> eservation |
| 3. A. <u>s</u> eniority | B. <u>s</u> eek | C. w <u>e</u> st | D. ph<u>y</u>sical |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. facility | B. traditional | C. historical | D. television |
| 2. A. tuberculosis | B. seniority | C. possibility | D. technological |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

1. Despite changes brought on by industrialisation and modernisation, shoulder poles the main carriers of 80 percent of the rural population.
A. continue B. exist C. stay **D. remain**
2. The image of an old lady with the traditional **áo dài** on a rickshaw on her way back from the market is still so for Vietnamese people.
A. meaning
meaningfulness **B. meaningful** C. meaningless D.
3. Furthermore, traditional help to develop their senses, memory, thoughts, imagination, linguistic capacity and basic concepts about the national culture.
A. habits **B. games** C. customs D. practices
4. Working as street vendors has created countless jobs, and it has become in Ha Noi.
A. **part of life** B. parts of life C. part of lives D. life parts
5. “Quang ganh” is two baskets hung from either end of a bamboo pole the shoulders.
A. across B. at **C. on** D. above
6. Viet Nam’s tug-of-war game was also as a UNESCO cultural intangible heritage of humanity in December 2015.
A. realised **B. recognised** C. allowed D. seen
7. People in Bac Ninh province believe that if the tug-of-war team facing the east wins, it will bring bumper crops and good luck, and that the situation will be just the if the team facing the west wins.
A. different B. same C. other **D. opposite**
8. The first university that the western educational system was built in Ha Noi, in 1919 with the medicine school and 1933 with the law school.

A. requested **B. applied** C. applied to D. related

9. In the past, white, or violet ao dai by Vietnamese female students as their uniforms.

A. wore B. used to wear **C. was worn** D. would be wear

10. We all wish there a smart board in our classroom.

A. is **B. was** C. has been D. had been

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

academically	scholarly	exhibition show	tradition
symbolic	features		occasion

Through centuries, one of the most (1) **symbolic** elements of a Vietnamese village has been its gate. However, the image is fast disappearing due to rapid urbanisation. One way of keeping the image alive is via photography. A(n) (2) ... **exhibition** entitled “Old Gates” consisted of nearly 700 photos taken of typical village gates in northern Viet Nam, which opened in Ha Noi on the (3) ... **occasion** of the National Cultural Heritage Day. Villages in the north usually have a main gate and one leading to the rice fields alongside minor gates. Many have disappeared forever. Gates differ depending on typical village (4) **features** A major trading village such as Cu Da in Ha Noi would have a sizeable gate while more (5) **scholarly** villages would have their gates engraved and decorated.

V. Read the situations and write wishes you want to make for them.

1. The school authorities can't set holidays based on local weather conditions.

I wish **the school authorities could set holidays based on local weather conditions.**

2. That university often doesn't attract enough enrolments for the new school year.

I wish **that university often attracted/ could attract enough enrolments for the new school year.**

3. We can't study the books written by famous scholars in the Ly and Tran dynasties because Chinese Ming aggressors took them to China.

I wish ... **we could study the books written by famous scholars in the Ly and Tran dynasties.**

4. Many small children don't learn how to swim so they often suffer-from drowning.

I wish ... many small children learned how to swim.

5. Many graduates from colleges don't have enough skills to meet the requirements of their jobs.

I wish graduates from colleges had enough skills to meet the requirements of their jobs...

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits each blank space in the following passage.

Rickshaw in Vietnamese Life

It is just simple and ordinary as its (1) No noisy sound from engines, no obscure smoke and no spending too much for commuting. From a long time ago, Vietnamese people have thought of the rickshaw as a (2) means of transportation when going out. It is not only close-knit to Vietnamese but also connected strongly with the foreigners (3) all of them were attracted by this unique means at the first time visiting Viet Nam.

The rickshaw has existed for a long time in Vietnamese life, and become quite necessary as the (4) in a body. Not only the Vietnamese feel (5) to rickshaw, foreigners are also impressed by this unique vehicle. They will be fond of sitting on the rickshaw for a (6) tour around Sword Lake or around on the streets to (7) dreamy and peaceful photos in the ancient citadel.

Traveling in a rickshaw is the time for peacefully (8) windy sunset and bright sunrises on the beach of Nha Trang or Da Nang or elsewhere. How pleasant it is for you to enjoy a relaxing feeling on the short (9) trip.

Viet Nam is becoming more and more modern; however, rickshaw still (10) through the time and has a stand in the minds of the residents.

1. A. presence **B. appearance** C. judgment D. performance
2. A. shared B. recognized C. friendly **D. familiar**
3. A. although **B. as** C. but D. while
4. **A. breath** B. air C. rest D. recovery
5. **A. close** B. closed C. closest D. closing
6. A. sight B. sighting **C. sightseeing** D. sightseer
7. A. catch **B. take** C. bring D. keep
8. A. welcome **B. welcoming** C. welcomed D. being welcomed
9. A. city B. town **C. urban** D. field
10. A. keeps B. continues C. lives **D. survives**

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to each question.

For formal ceremonies, men would have two additional items, a long gown with slits on either side, and a turban, usually in black or brown made of cotton or silk. In feudal times, there were strict dress codes. Ordinary people were not allowed to wear clothes with dyes rather than black, brown or white. Costumes in yellow were reserved for the King. Those in purple and red were reserved for high - ranking court officials, while dresses in blue were exclusively worn by petty court officials. Men's dress has gradually changed along with social development.

The traditional set of a long gown and turban gave way to more modern-looking suits, while business shirts and trousers have replaced traditional long sleeved shirts and wide trousers. Traditional costumes still exist and efforts are increasingly being made to restore traditional festivals and entertainment which incorporate traditional costumes.

For women, the outer garment is a special silk gown called an “ao tu than” which is brown or light brown in colour with four slits divided equally on its lower section. The second layer is a gown in a light yellow colour and the third layer is a pink gown. When a woman wears her three

gowns, she fastens the buttons on the side, and leave those on the chest unfastened so that it forms a shaped collar. This allows her to show the different colors on the upper part of the three gowns. Today, on formal occasions women wear “ao dai”.

1. In the past, the colour was used to represent
A. the difference between men and women B. formal ceremonies
C. the social development **D. the rank in the society**
2. In the past, for formal ceremonies men wore
A. costumes in purple or yellow not like the King
B. **a long gown and a turban in black or brown**
C. costumes made of red cotton or silk
D. dresses in blue as petty court officials
3. Traditional festivals
A. **promote traditional costumes** B. encourage modern-looking suits
C. replace traditional suits by business ones D. make men's dresses change
4. All of the following are true about women's traditional costumes EXCEPT that
A. the gowns have different colours on the upper part
B. we can see a shaped collar in the front
C. **the two inner gowns cannot be seen**
D. the outer gown has four equal parts on its lower section
5. The word “gown” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to
A. **a long dress worn on formal occasions**
B. a woman's dress, especially a long one
C. a long piece of clothing worn by judges
D. a piece of clothing that is worn over other clothes to protect them

VIII. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. traditional library/ function/ storage/ preservation/ physical items/ particularly books/ periodicals.

A traditional library has the function of storage and preservation of physical items, particularly books and periodicals.

2. Books/ shelves/ divided/ based/ subjects/ and/ readers/ travel/ library/ borrow books. **Books on the shelves are divided based on the subjects and readers have to travel to the library to borrow books.**

3. For/ digital library/ readers/ get/ access/ materials/ house/ Internet.

For a digital library, readers can get the access to materials from their house through the Internet.

4. Readers/ browse/ materials/ based/ hyperlinks/ or keywords.

Readers can browse the materials based on hyperlinks or keywords.

5. With/ digital library/ we/ read/ all the books/ which/ published/ world.

With a digital library, we can read all the books which have been published in the world.

UNIT 5: WONDERS OF VIET NAM

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES, GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

I. New words:

administrative (adj)	/əd'mɪnɪstrətɪv/ /	thuộc về hoặc liên quan đến việc quản lý; hành chính	picturesque (adj)	/ˌpɪktʃə'resk/	đẹp, gây ấn tượng mạnh (phong cảnh)
astounding (adj)	/ə'staʊndɪŋ/	làm sửng sờ, làm sững sờ	recognition (n)	/ˌrekəɡ'nɪʃn/	sự công nhận, sự thừa nhận
cavern (n)	/'kævən/	hang lớn, động	rickshaw (n)	/'rɪkʃəʊ/	xe xích lô, xe kéo
citadel (n)	/'sɪtədəl/	thành lũy, thành trì	round (in a game) (n)	/raʊnd/	hiệp, vòng (trong trò chơi)
complex (n)	/'kɒmpleks/	khu liên hợp, quần thể	sculpture (n)	/'skʌlptʃə(r)/	bức tượng (điều khắc)
contestant (n)	/kən'testənt/	đấu thủ, thí sinh	setting (n)	/'setɪŋ/	khung cảnh, môi trường
fortress (n)	/'fɔːtrəs/	pháo đài	spectacular (adj)	/spek'tækjələ(r)/	đẹp mắt, ngoạn mục, hùng vĩ
geological (adj)	/ˌdʒi:ə'lɒdʒɪkl/	(thuộc) địa chất	structure (n)	/'strʌktʃə(r)/	công trình kiến trúc, công trình xây dựng

limestone (n)	/ˈlaɪmstəʊn/	đá vôi	tomb (n)	/tu:m/	ngôi mộ
measure (n)	/ˈmeʒə(r)/	biện pháp, phương sách			
paradise (n)	/ˈpærədəɪs/	thiên đường			

II. Grammar:

1. Passive voice: Impersonal passive

Form: It + to be + past participle + that + S + V

We use the impersonal passive to express other people's opinions. It can be used with reporting verbs, including say, think, believe, know, hope, expect, report, understand, claim, etc.

Example:

Active	Passive
People think he is a great teacher	It is thought that he is a great teacher.
People say she works 16 hours a day.	It is said that she works 16 hours a day.
They reported that two people had been injured in the accident.	It was reported that two people had been injured in the accident.

- 1.. It is believed that the best time to visit the complex of Hue Monuments is in April.
2. It is reported that thousands of visitors come to enjoy breathtaking views of Ha Long Bay every year.
3. It is claimed that Phong Nha - Ke Bang can be compared to a huge geological museum
4. It is understood that Binh Dai Fortress was designed to control movement on the Perfumed River.
5. It is expected the government will have measures to protect and preserve our manmade wonders

2. suggest + V-ing/clause with should

After the verb suggest, we can use V-ing or a clause with should:

- S + suggest + V-ing
- S + suggest + (that) + S + (should) + bare infinitive

* We use suggest + V-ing/clause with should to tell someone our ideas about what they should do, where they should go, etc.

Example: I suggest that we should go out to eat.

I suggested going in my car.

* We can also use suggest + V-ing/clause with should to report someone's ideas about what someone else should do, or what they should do themselves.

Example:

- Her mother suggested going to see the doctor.
- The government suggested closing a number of primary schools.
- The professor suggested that the students should read a number of books before the exam.

III. Pronunciation: Stress on short words in sentences

B. EXERCISES

PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose iriain stressed syllable is different from the rest. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

1. A. refreshment B. horrible C. exciting D. intention
2. A. detective B. romantic C. history D. adventure
3. A. biography B. historic C. discover D. authorship
4. A. essential B. furniture C. opposite D. fortunate
5. A. coincide B. community C. conception D. committee

II. Choose the correct option for each gap in the sentences.

1. The Imperial Citadel of Thang Long is a complex that royal palaces and monuments.

- A. consist of B. consists of C. consists on D. consist on

2. It is reported that..... come to enjoy beautiful view of Binh Dai Fortress every year.

- A. thousands of visitors B. thousand of visitors
c. thousands visitors D. thousands of visitor

3. I suggest the government should..... the number of visitors every day.

- A. limiting B. limited c. limit D. limits

4. Perfume pagoda Is a religious site being a great sightseeing spot In Viet Nam.

- A. the same as B. as well as c. such as D. and

5. that the temple was built on the current site of Thien Tru In the 15th century.
- A. It is think B. It was thought c. They thought D. It is thought
6. Nowadays, Perfume pagoda large numbers of pilgrims from all over Viet Nam.
- A. attracts B. attracted c. attracting D. attract
7. The teacher suggested that the students all their homework before going to bed.
- A. must finish B. finish C. finished D. should finish
8. It is hoped that many defensive measures to protect and preserve our man-made wonders.
- A. is taken B. will take C. will be taken D. are taken
9. Many valuable things and destroyed from man-made wonders in the world.
- A. have been stolen B. has been stolen
A. are stolen D. will be stolen
10. It is said that Ha Long Bay is a magical place, attracting more tourists than ever since UNESCO's of this beautiful spot.
- A. recognize B. recognition C. recognizing D. recognizes

III. Fill in each blank in the sentences with the correct word from the box.

geological setting complex rickshaw limestone fishing architectural biodiversity

1. Like a local you should take an afternoon ride through the bustling streets of Ha Noi Old Quarter.
2. We can continue our journey and explore the fastinating Cua Van floating village in Ha Long Bay.
3. With outstanding values, ha Long Bay was recognized as the world natural haritage site twice in 1994 and 2000.
4. Ha Long Bay is also home to high with typical ecosystems and thousands of fauna and flora species.
5. Located in the mountains of Phong Nha - Ke Bang nationl Park, Son Duong Cave was explored by a group of scientists from British Cave Research Association.

6. The Hue Citadel, which is a of monuments, has been officially recognized by the UNESCO as a World Heritage Site.
7. Hue is placed in a wonderful: the Ngu Binh Mountain in the south, the sand dunes of Con Hen and Con Da Vien on the Perfume River as "dragon on the left, tiger on the right" to protect the citadel.
8. Most of the buildings in Hoi An, which reflect the traditional style of the 18th and 19th centuries, are carefully preserved.

IV. Give the correct form of the word in capitals to complete each of the following sentences

1. There are many sculptures along the to the main temple.	ENTER
2. Protecting natural wonders brings both social and benefits.	FINANCE
3. Phong Nha - Ke Bang can be compared to a precious museum.	GEOLOGY
4. The snow features six from different parts of the country.	CONTEST
5. Chua Keo (in Thai Binh province) is a pagoda which was built about 400 years ago.	WOOD
6. Many more tourists have visited Ha Long Bay since UNESCO's of this beautiful spot.	RECOGNISE
7. Bai Dinh Pagoda is site which is located in Ninh Binh Province.	RELIGION
8. May I have a about the trip to Cuc Phuong National Park next week?	SUGGEST
9. My most experience was my trip to Hoi An in the summer of 2015.	FORGET
10. We got a lot of from our holiday in Da Nang last year.	ENJOY

V. Read the paragraphs below and choose the most suitable headings for paragraphs.

- A. Fansipan
- B. Best Times to Explore Fansipan
- C. Fansipan Travel Tips

D. Fansipan Quick Facts Ei

E. Where is Fansipan

F. Best Ways to See and Experience Fansipan

1.

.....

- * tallest mountain in Viet Nam
- * Reaches a height of 10,312 feet (3,143 m)
- * Features a varied topography

2

.....

....

- * Fansipan is the tallest mountain in Viet Nam as well as the entire Indochina (Viet Nam, Laos, and Cambodia) area. The summit reaches a height of 10,312 feet (3,143 meters). It is nicknamed, “the Roof of Indochina.”
- * The mountain of Fansipan features a varied topography. There is a monument at the summit celebrating the ascent.

3.

Fansipan is in the northwest region of the country. It is found in the Lao Cai Province in the Hoang Lien Son mountain range.

The coordinates of then mountain are 22°18'12" N and 103°46'30" E.

4.

Climbing the mountain is the anticipated way of experiencing the mountain. The climb is challenging featuring a fairly steep ascent. Although it technically can be climbed with a descent in a single day, it is hard to find a tour company to take on that plan. The majority of ascents of Fansipan are 2 to 3 days with two days being the more common. A three day trip is a more leisurely ascent with more time for acclimation. There is a small village found near 4,920 feet (1,500 m) where rest and securing food can happen.

Another opportunity for camping overnight occurs at 9,190 feet (2,800 m). The cost of the tour and ascent of the mountain usually includes the fees associated with using the facilities.

5.

The country frequently experiences rain and sunshine is common as well. The weather usually consists of high humidity, December through March can result in cold temperatures for the northern mountain area where Fansipan is located.

July and August is the monsoon season with hot and humid weather conditions. This is probably the best time to visit the northern mountain area for warmer temperatures for trekking up the mountain.

6.

The country is long which means it is easy for weather conditions to vary from one region to the next. The summer months are the monsoon season delivering high humidity and hot temperatures. This can be uncomfortable for exploring Viet Nam, but it can be the ideal time for trekking through the northern mountain area of the country.

VI. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

Da Lat - dream city

Da Lat lies on Lam Vien plateau, in the Center Highland province of Lam Dong, 300 km north of Ho Chi Minh City. Da Lat is a well-known city (1)..... all people who have been there once. Da Lat is known (2)..... a city of pine trees, waterfalls and flowers. Da Lat is described as a forest of flowers with

(3)..... colours and various species. Flowers can be found

(4)..... and in any season. We can see flowers in Da Lat in the park,

(5)..... of the houses, in the gardens etc. Da Lat has the widest range of orchid varieties in the country. Da Lat has (6)..... rivers and canals but it

has many picturesque waterfalls. It takes tourists several days (7)..... all the waterfalls in the area. The famous Cam Ly Falls is only 3 km (8)..... the

town center. The Prenn Falls is 10 km in the south of Da Lat. The water

(9)..... now like a white shade. Da Lat people are very

(10)..... of it. They always boast to tourists about it in the first place. Around the Prenn Falls is the valley of various flowers and pine hills.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. exciting | B. attracting | C. suggesting | D. believing |
| 2. A. as | B. like | C. same | D. similar |
| 3. A. different | B. general | C. official | D. astounding |
| 4. A. somewhere | B. anywhere | C. nowhere | D. everywhere |
| 5. A. behind | B. next to | C. opposite | D. in front |
| 6. A. few | B. little | C. much | D. lots |
| 7. A. visit | B. visiting | C. to visit | D. visited |
| 8. A. in | B. at | C. to | D. from |
| 9. A. falls | B. goes | C. pours | D. walks |
| 10. A. pride | B. priding | C. prided | D. proud |

VII. Fill in the blank with a suitable word to complete the passage.

... In the spring of 2009, Sims was a member of the first expedition to enter Son Doong Cave, or “mountain river cave,” in a remote (1) of central Viet Nam. Hidden in rugged Phong Nha-Ke Bang National Park near the border with Laos, the cave is part of a network of 150 or so Caves, many still not surveyed, in the Animate Mountains. During the first expedition, the team explored two and a half miles of Son Doong Cave before a 200-foot wall of muddy calcite stopped them.

They (2) it the Great Wall of Viet Nam. Above it they could make

out an open space and traces of light, but they had no idea what lay on the other side. A year (3)....., they have returned - seven hard-core British cavers, a few scientists, and a crew of porters - to climb the wall, if they can, measure the passage, and push on, if possible, all the way to the end of the (4)

.....

The trail disappears before me into a difficult pile of breakdown - building-size blocks of stone that (5) fallen from the ceiling and crashed onto the cave floor. I crane my head back, but the immensity of the cave douses my headlamp's tiny light, as if I were staring up into a starless night sky. I've been told I'm inside a space large enough to park a 747, but I have no way to know; the darkness (6)

..... like a sleeping bag pulled over my head.

I switch off my headlamp just to feel the depth of (7)

darkness. At first there is nothing. But then, as my pupils adjust, I'm surprised to make out a faint, ghostly light ahead. I pick my way through the rubble, almost running from excitement, rocks scattering beneath my feet and echoing in the invisible Chamber.

Traversing up a steep slope, I turn a ridge as if on a mountainside and am stopped in my tracks.

An enormous shaft of sunlight plunges into the cave like a waterfall. The hole in the ceiling through which the light cascades is unbelievably large, at (8)

.....300 feet across. The light, penetrating deep into the cave, reveals for the first time the mind-blowing proportions of Son Doong Cave. The passage is perhaps 300 feet wide, the ceiling nearly 800 feet tall: room enough for an entire New York City block of 40-story buildings. (9) are actually wispy clouds up near the ceiling.

The light beaming from above reveals a tower of calcite on the cave floor that is more than 200 feet tall, smothered by ferns, palms, and other jungle plants. Stalactites hang

around the edges of the massive skylight like petrified icicles. Vines dangle hundreds of feet from the surface; swifts are diving and cutting in the brilliant column of sunshine. The tableau could have been created (10) an artist imagining how the world looked millions of years ago....

VIII. Rearrange the words and phrases to make meaningful sentence.

1. Phong Nha-Ke Bang / in / the 2 largest / is / the most spectacular / National Park / wilderness sites / South East Asia / and / one of / limestone regions / one of / in the world

/ . /

.....
.....
.....

2. Son Doong Cave / was / in 2009 / , / explored / in / discovered / 2011 / by / a / and / now open / British caving team / to / a limited number / from 2014 / of tourist / . /

.....
.....
.....

3. The / world famous / Ha Long Bay / probably / one of / is / the most / Wonders / fabulous natural / in Viet Nam / . . /

.....
.....
.....

4. Hue / once / the / capital of / was / the / emperors / of / , / and / Viet Nam / it's/an amazing place/to/for/an/ visit/on/ history/lesson/location/. /

.....
.....
.....

5. Ha Noi / is / , / and / you'll / find / Viet Nam's capital city / it / on / banks / of the / Red River / the / with / Hoan Kiem Lake / right/ its heart / at/ . /

.....
.....
.....

IX. Rewrite the following sentences using the impersonal passive.

1. People say that Ha Long Bay consists of about 2000 islands.
.....
2. They thought that the temple had been destroyed by a fire.
.....
3. The police have reported there is an accident on the way out to Sa Pa.
.....
4. We are expecting the park will be recognized as a World Heritage Site by UNESCO next year.
.....
5. Many people will claim the rule of the game is too complicated.
.....
6. We know that Trang An Landscape Complex was selected for filming "Kong: Skull Island".
.....
7. Everyone believe Son Duong Cave is one of the largest caves in the world.
.....
8. They estimated one million foreign tourists visited Vietnam in December 2015.
.....
9. We have understood that protecting natural wonders has many benefits.
.....
10. People hope that this complex of monuments will be open to the public soon.
.....

X. Use the information below to write a passage of about 200 words about Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex

Name	Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex
Location	Ninh Binh province; 100 km south of Hanoi
Reason for choosing the place	• spectacular place • Filming <i>Kong: Skull Islands</i> • UNESCO's World Heritage Site in 2014 • Called "Ha Long Bay on land"; caves, mountains, valleys, trees and historic relics.

Main feature of the place	• 10,000 ha • Trang An Eco-tourist Site: considered an outdoor geological museum; Bai Dinh Pagoda: largest pagoda in Vietnam and Southeast
	Asia • Tam Coc- Bich Dong Landscape: very beautiful, particularly in spring • Hoa Lu: ancient capital of Viet Nam in the 10th and the 11th century.
Comments and feelings about the place	A very unique example of human history, not only Viet Nam but also the region. Combination of both natural and cultural values.

TEST

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

1. A. ordinary B. pollution C. doctor D. alcohol
 2. A. gather B. there C. ethnic D. although
 3. A. accompany B. fascinating C. discriminate D. scoreboard
 4. A. mutual B. initiate C. picture D. question
- A. sufferings B. disasters C. species D. monuments

II. Choose the word or phrase in the box which has the same meaning as the underlined word/phrase in each of the following sentences.

coffee	stone tortoises	Da Nang	Ha Noi
Sai Gon	educational	institution	

VIETNAM

1. The Vietnamese are especially proud of their historic **capital city**. The old quarter of Ha Noi dates back to the 11th century.

2. Ha Noi's peaceful 'Van Mieu', or Temple of Literature, is Viet Nam's oldest educational institution. The Confucius inspired **university** was established for the education of mandarins.
3. Around the central courtyard of Van Mieu stand 82 stone tortoises. These beautiful ancient **sculptures** were built to honour the men who received doctorates in triennial examinations.
4. While most tourists neglect Viet Nam's fourth- **largest city** in favour of nearby Hue and Hoi An, it has considerable charm in its own right.
5. Another tourists' favourite is Sai Gon which was renamed Ho Chi Minh City following its fall in 1975. However, the **old name** is still used by both Vietnamese and foreigners, especially when referring to the most central part of the city.
6. The Vietnamese love a good cup of coffee. In the central market of Sai Gon, many small shops offer samples of this favourite **beverage**, individually brewed with a small metal French drip filter, and served with condensed milk.

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the passage. One of the seven wonders of the ancient world, the Great Pyramid of Giza was a monument of wisdom and prophecy built as a tomb for Pharaoh Cheops in 2720 BC.

Despite its antiquity, certain aspects of its (1. construct)make it one of truly great wonders of the world. The thirteen-acre structure near the Nile River is a solid mass of stone blocks covered with limestone. Inside are the number (2. hide") passageways and the burial chamber for the pharaoh. It is the largest single structure in the world. The four sides of the pyramid are aligned almost exactly on true north, south, east, and west - an (3. credible) engineering feat, the ancient Egyptians were sun worshippers and great astronomers, so computations for the Great Pyramid were based on astronomical (4. observe) Explorations and detailed examinations of the base of the structure reveal many intersecting lines. Further (5 . science) study indicates that these represent a type of timeline of events - past, present and future. Many of the events have been (6. interpret) and found to coincide with known facts of the past. Others are prophesied for the future generations anti are currently under (7. investigate) Many believe that pyramids have supernatural powers and this one is no exception. Some (8. research)

.....even associate it with extraterrestrial beings of the ancient past.
Was this superstructure made by ordinary beings, or one built by a race far superior to any known today?

IV. Read the passage and choose the correct answer.

Two great things about Hoi An's Old Town are that it is (1) _____ enough to get around in on foot and the traffic is nowhere near as heavy as in bigger cities. Some of the streets only (2) _____ bike and motorbike traffic and some are (3) _____ only.

These factors make Hoi An even more inviting for most travelers to Viet Nam, especially those who have passed through frenetic Ho Chi Minh City (aka Sai Gon) or Ha Noi.

Many buildings in the Old Town were constructed over a century ago and feature strong Chinese influences stemming (4) _____ merchants from Guangzhou, Fujian, Chiu Chow and Hainan. Some of the wooden signboards bearing the company names are carved and gilded in Chinese characters, f5V _____ the strong presence of the Chinese in Hoi An ever since its (6) _____ times. Tradition is still very much alive in the Old Town. Even though many of the old shops have been converted to modern businesses aimed at tourists including countless tailors, souvenir shops, art galleries, restaurants and (7) _____, all have been converted (8) _____ care to preserve the past.

Happily, all Hoi An's major attractions or (9) _____ are located within walking distance of each other including the Japanese covered bridge, the Chinese assembly halls, Guan Yin Temple, the museum of history and culture and the Tran (10) Home and chapel.

1. A. small	B. large	C. wide	D. narrow
2. A. permit	B. allow	C. authorize	D. ask
3. A. walker	B. pedestrian	C. people	D. tourist
4. A. on	B. in	C. of	D. from
5. A. to reflect	B. reflected	C. reflecting	D. being reflected
6. A. advantage	B. strong	C. prosperous	D. benefit
7. A. coffee	B. café	C. café noir	D. Cafeteria
8. A. with	B. into	C. of	D. on
9. A. ground	B. land	C. landmark	D. yard
10. A. familiar	B. familiarity	C. familiarize	D. family

V. There are 10 mistakes in this passage. Find out and correct them.

	Your corrections
... Another man-made beach completed our list. The name	1. 2.
Bai Chay can be explain in a historic story. This is where the	3 4
supplying ships of the invading Mongol force attacked and	5 6
burnt by Vietnamese people in the 13 th century. Some burnt	7 8
ships were drifted to the island, setting the forest along the	9 10.....
beach at fire, hence the name (Bai Chay in Vietnamese means “Burning Beach”).	
Bai Chay Beach is only 500 meters long but about 100	
meters widely. Of the five beaches, this is most crowded yet	
vibrant one. It is packed of several restaurants specializing	
for seafood, a water-puppet theater, a traditional music	
theater, a theme park... There is also surfing and motorboats	
for those people love sports.	

VI. Write full sentences to make a passage, using the suggested words and phrases given. Dear Hien,

1. We / have / interesting / time / Hoi An / . /
2. The streets / here / narrow / that / cars / not / allow / center / town / . /
3. Therefore / , / we / have / walk / . / The / houses / very / old / but/ beautiful / . /
4. However / , / I / not / like / way / they / business / here / . /
5. It / seem / that / every / house / shop / sell / souvenirs / and / other stuffs / . /
6. The people / very / friend / and / help / . /
7. The / food / look / fun / but / it / taste / quite / nice / . /
8. I / not / have / buy / anything / you / . /
9. But / I / buy / you / some / little / colour / lanterns / . /

10. See / you / next week / . /

Love,

Mathew

KEY

I. Choose the word whose iriain stressed syllable is different from the rest. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

1. A. refreshment **B. horrible** C. exciting D. intention
2. A. detective B. romantic **C. history** D. adventure
3. A. biography B. historic C. discover **D. authorship**
4. **A. essential** B. furniture C. opposite D. fortunate
5. **A. coincide** B. community C. conception D. committee

II. Choose the correct option for each gap in the sentences.

1. The Imperial Citadel of Thang Long is a complex that
royal palaces and monuments.
B. consist of **B. consists of** C. consists on D. consist on
2. It is reported that..... come to enjoy beautiful view of Binh Dai Fortress every year.
A. thousands of visitors B. thousand of visitors
c. thousands visitors D. thousands of visitor
3. I suggest the government should..... the number of visitors every day.
A. limiting B. limited **c. limit** D. limits
4. Perfume pagoda Is a religious site being a great sightseeing spot In Viet Nam.
A. the same as **B. as well as** c. such as D. and
5. that the temple was built on the current site of Thien Tru In the 15th century.
A. It is think B. It was thought c. They thought **D. It is thought**
6. Nowadays, Perfume pagoda large numbers of pilgrims from all over Viet Nam.
A. attracts B. attracted c. attracting D. attract
7. The teacher suggested that the students all their homework before going to bed.
A. must finish B. finish C. finished **D. should finish**
8. It is hoped that many defensive measures to protect and preserve our man-made wonders.

A. is taken B. will take C. will be taken D. are taken

9. Many valuable things and destroyed from man-made wonders in the world.

A. have been stolen

B. has been stolen

B. are stolen

D. will be stolen

10. It is said that Ha Long Bay is a magical place, attracting more tourists than ever since UNESCO's of this beautiful spot.

A. recognize B.

recognition

C. recognizing

D. recognizes

III. Fill in each blank in the sentences with the correct word from the box.

geological setting complex rickshaw limestone fishing architectural biodiversity

1. Like a local you should take an afternoon ride through the bustling streets of Ha Noi Old Quarter.

2. We can continue our journey and explore the fascinating Cua Van floating village in Ha Long Bay.

3. With outstanding values, ha Long Bay was recognized as the world natural heritage site twice in 1994 and 2000.

4. Ha Long Bay is also home to high with typical eco-systems and thousands of fauna and flora species.

5. Located in the mountains of Phong Nha - Ke Bang national Park, Son Duong Cave was explored by a group of scientists from British Cave Research Association.

6. The Hue Citadel, which is a of monuments, has been officially recognized by the UNESCO as a World Heritage Site.

7. Hue is placed in a wonderful: the Ngu Binh Mountain in the south, the sand dunes of Con Hen and Con Da Vien on the Perfume River as "dragon on the left, tiger on the right" to protect the citadel.

8. Most of the buildings in Hoi An, which reflect the traditional style of the 18th and 19th centuries, are carefully preserved.

1. rickshaw

2. fishing

3. geological

4. biodiversity

5. limestone

6. complex

7. setting

8. architectural

IV. Give the correct form of the word in capitals to complete each of the following sentences

1. There are many sculptures along the to the main temple. ENTRANCE	ENTER
2. Protecting natural wonders brings both social and benefits. FINANCIAL	FINANCE
3. Phong Nha - Ke Bang can be compared to a precious museum. GEOLOGICAL	GEOLOGY
4. The snow features six from different parts of the country. CONTESTANTS	CONTEST
5. Chua Keo (in Thai Binh province) is a pagoda which was built about 400 years ago. WOODEN	WOOD
6. Many more tourists have visited Ha Long Bay since UNESCO's of this beautiful spot. RECOGNITION	RECOGNISE
7. Bai Dinh Pagoda is site which is located in Ninh Binh Province. RELIGIOUS	RELIGION
8. May I have a about the trip to Cuc Phuong National Park next week? SUGGESTION	SUGGEST
9. My most experience was my trip to Hoi An in the summer of 2015. UNFORGETTABLE	FORGET
10. We got a lot of from our holiday in Da Nang last year. ENJOYMENT	ENJOY

V. Read the paragraphs below and choose the most suitable headings for paragraphs.

- A. Fansipan
- B. Best Times to Explore Fansipan
- C. Fansipan Travel Tips
- D. Fansipan Quick Facts
- E. Where is Fansipan
- F. Best Ways to See and Experience Fansipan

1.

.....

- * tallest mountain in Viet Nam
- * Reaches a height of 10,312 feet (3,143 m)
- * Features a varied topography

.....
....

- * Fansipan is the tallest mountain in Viet Nam as well as the entire Indochina (Viet Nam, Laos, and Cambodia) area. The summit reaches a height of 10,312 feet (3,143 meters). It is nicknamed, “the Roof of Indochina.”
- * The mountain of Fansipan features a varied topography. There is a monument at the summit celebrating the ascent.

3.

Fansipan is in the northwest region of the country. It is found in the Lao Cai Province in the Hoang Lien Son mountain range.

The coordinates of then mountain are 22°18'12" N and 103°46'30" E.

4.

Climbing the mountain is the anticipated way of experiencing the mountain. The climb is challenging featuring a fairly steep ascent. Although it technically can be climbed with a descent in a single day, it is hard to find a tour company to take on that plan. The majority of ascents of Fansipan are 2 to 3 days with two days being the more common. A three day trip is a more leisurely ascent with more time for acclimation. There is a small village found near 4,920 feet (1,500 m) where rest and securing food can happen.

Another opportunity for camping overnight occurs at 9,190 feet (2,800 m). The cost of the tour and ascent of the mountain usually includes the fees associated with using the facilities.

5.

The country frequently experiences rain and sunshine is common as well. The weather usually consists of high humidity, December through March can result in cold temperatures for the northern mountain area where Fansipan is located.

July and August is the monsoon season with hot and humid weather conditions. This is probably the best time to visit the northern mountain area for warmer temperatures for trekking up the mountain.

6.

The country is long which means it Is easy for weather conditions to vary from one region to the next. The summer months are the monsoon season delivering high humidity and hot temperatures. This can be uncomfortable for exploring Viet Nam, but it can be the ideal time for trekking through the northern mountain area of the country.

2. A. Fansipan
3. E. Where is Fansipan
4. F. Best Ways to See and Experience Fansipan
5. B. Best Times to Explore Fansipan
6. C. Fansipan Travel Tips

VI. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank. Da

Lat - dream city

Da Lat lies on Lam Vien plateau, in the Center Highland province of Lam Dong, 300 km north of Ho Chi Minh City. Da Lat is a well-known city (1)..... all people who have been there once. Da Lat is known (2)..... a city of pine trees, waterfalls and flowers. Da Lat is described as a forest of flowers with (3)..... colours and various species. Flowers can be found (4)..... and in any season. We can see flowers in Da Lat in the park, (5)..... of the houses, in the gardens etc. Da Lat has the widest range of orchid varieties in the country. Da Lat has (6)..... rivers and canals but it has many picturesque waterfalls. It takes tourists several days (7)..... all the waterfalls in the area. The famous Cam Ly Falls is only 3 km (8)..... the town center. The Prenn Falls is 10 km in the south of Da Lat. The water (9)..... now like a white shade. Da Lat people are very (10)..... of it. They always boast to tourists about it in the first place. Around the Prenn Falls is the valley of various flowers and pine hills.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------------|----|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| | 1. | A. exciting | B. attracting | C. suggesting | D. believing |
| A. | 2. | B. like | C. same | D. similar | |
| as | 3. | B. general | C. official | D. astounding | |
| A.different | | | | | |
| 4. A. somewhere | | B. anywhere | C. nowhere | D. everywhere | |
| 5. A. behind | | B. next to | C. opposite | D. in front | |
| 6. A. few | | B. little | C. much | D. lots | |
| 7. A. visit | | B. visiting | C. to visit | D. visited | |
| 8. A. in | | B. at | C. to | D. from | |
| 9. A. falls | | B. goes | C. pours | D. walks | |
| 10. A. pride | | B. priding | C. prided | D. proud | |

VII. Fill in the blank with a suitable word to complete the passage.

... In the spring of 2009, Sims was a member of the first expedition to enter Son Doong Cave, or “mountain river cave,” in a remote (1) of central Viet Nam. Hidden in rugged Phong Nha-Ke Bang National Park near the border with

Laos, the cave is part of a network of 150 or so Caves, many still not surveyed, in the Animate Mountains. During the first expedition, the team explored two and a half miles of Son Doong Cave before a 200-foot wall of muddy calcite stopped them.

They (2) it the Great Wall of Viet Nam. Above it they could make

out an open space and traces of light, but they had no idea what lay on the other side. A year (3)....., they have returned - seven hard-core British cavers, a few scientists, and a crew of porters - to climb the wall, if they can, measure the passage, and push on, if possible, all the way to the end of the (4)

.....

The trail disappears before me into a difficult pile of breakdown - building-size blocks of stone that (5) fallen from the ceiling and crashed onto the cave floor. I crane my head back, but the immensity of the cave douses my headlamp's tiny light, as if I were staring up into a starless night sky. I've been told I'm inside a space large enough to park a 747, but I have no way to know; the darkness (6)

..... like a sleeping bag pulled over my head.

I switch off my headlamp just to feel the depth of (7)

darkness. At first there is nothing. But then, as my pupils adjust, I'm surprised to make out a faint, ghostly light ahead. I pick my way through the rubble, almost running from excitement, rocks scattering beneath my feet and echoing in the invisible Chamber.

Traversing up a steep slope, I turn a ridge as if on a mountainside and am stopped in my tracks.

An enormous shaft of sunlight plunges into the cave like a waterfall. The hole in the ceiling through which the light cascades is unbelievably large, at (8)

.....300 feet across. The light, penetrating deep into the cave, reveals for the first time the mind-blowing proportions of Son Doong Cave. The passage is perhaps 300 feet wide, the ceiling nearly 800 feet tall: room enough for an entire New York City block of 40-story buildings. (9) are actually wispy clouds up near the ceiling.

The light beaming from above reveals a tower of calcite on the cave floor that is more than 200 feet tall, smothered by ferns, palms, and other jungle plants. Stalactites hang around the edges of the massive skylight like petrified icicles. Vines dangle hundreds of feet from the surface; swifts are diving and cutting in the brilliant column of sunshine.

The tableau could have been created (10) an artist imagining how the world looked millions of years ago....

(1) part

(2) named

(3) later

(4) cave

(5) have

(6) is

(7) the

(8) least

(9) There (10)

by

VIII. Rearrange the words and phrases to make meaningful sentence.

1. Phong Nha-Ke Bang / in / the 2 largest / is / the most spectacular / National Park / wilderness sites / South East Asia / and / one of / limestone regions / one of / in the world

/ . /

.....
.....
.....

2. Son Doong Cave / was / in 2009 / , / explored / in / discovered / 2011 / by / a / and / now open / British caving team / to / a limited number / from 2014 / of tourist / . /

.....
.....
.....

3. The / world famous / Ha Long Bay / probably / one of / is / the most / Wonders / fabulous natural / in Viet Nam / . . /

.....
.....
.....

4. Hue / once / the / capital of / was / the / emperors / of / , / and / Viet Nam / it's/an amazing place/to/for/an/ visit/on/ history/lesson/location/. /

.....
.....
.....

5. Ha Noi / is / , / and / you'll / find / Viet Nam's capital city / it / on / banks / of the / Red River / the / with / Hoan Kiem Lake / right/ its heart / at/ . /

.....
.....
.....

1. Phong Nha-Ke Bang National Park is one of the most spectacular wilderness sites in South East Asia and one of the 2 largest limestone regions in the world.

2. Son Doong Cave was discovered in 2009, explored in 2011 by a British caving team and now open to a limited number of tourist from 2014.
3. The world famous Ha Long Bay is probably one of the most fabulous natural wonders in Viet Nam.
4. Hue was once the capital of the emperors of Viet Nam, and it's an amazing place to visit for an on location history lesson.
5. Ha Noi is Viet Nam's capital city, and you'll find it on the banks of the Red River with Hoan Kiem Lake right at its heart.

IX. Rewrite the following sentences using the impersonal passive.

11. People say that Ha Long Bay consists of about 2000 islands.

.....

12. They thought that the temple had been destroyed by a fire.

.....

13. The police have reported there is an accident on the way out to Sa Pa.

.....

14. We are expecting the park will be recognized as a World Heritage Site by UNESCO next year.

.....

15. Many people will claim the rule of the game is too complicated.

.....

16. We know that Trang An Landscape Complex was selected for filming "Kong: Skull Island".

.....

17. Everyone believe Son Duong Cave is one of the largest caves in the world.

.....

18. They estimated one million foreign tourists visited Vietnam in December 2015.

.....

19. We have understood that protecting natural wonders has many benefits.

.....

20. People hope that this complex of monuments will be open to the public soon.

.....

1. *It is said that Ha Long Bay consists of about 2000 islands.*
2. *It was thought that the temple had been destroyed by a fire.*
3. *It has been reported there is an accident on the way out to Sa Pa.*
4. *It is being expected that the park will be recognized as a World Heritage Site by UNESCO next year.*
5. *It will be claimed that the rule of the game is too complicated.*
6. *It is known that Trang An Landscape Complex was selected for filming "Kong: Skull Island".*
7. *It is believed that Son Duong Cave is one of the largest caves in the world.*
8. *It was estimated that one million foreign tourists visited Vietnam in December 2015.*
9. *It has been understood that protecting natural wonders has many benefits.*
10. *It is hoped that this complex of monuments will be open to the public soon.*

X. Use the information below to write a passage of about 200 words about Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex

Name	Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex
Location	Ninh Binh province; 100 km south of Hanoi
Reason for choosing the place	• spectacular place • Filming <i>Kong: Skull Islands</i> • UNESCO's World Heritage Site in 2014 • Called "Ha Long Bay on land"; caves, mountains, valleys, trees and historic relics.
Main feature of the place	• 10,000 ha • Trang An Eco-tourist Site: considered an outdoor geological museum; Bai Dinh Pagoda: largest pagoda in Vietnam and Southeast Asia • Tam Coc- Bich Dong Landscape: very beautiful, particularly in spring • Hoa Lu: ancient capital of Viet Nam in the 10th and the 11th century.
Comments and feelings about the place	A very unique example of human history, not only Viet Nam but also the region. Combination of both natural and cultural values.

It is said that Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex is spectacular place, attracting more tourists than ever seen *Kong: Skull Islands* movies cast and crew came there for filming. It is situated in Ninh Binh province, which is about 100 km south of Hanoi. This beautiful landscape was recognized by UNESCO as a World Heritage Site in 2014. It is also called "Ha Long Bay on land" with numerous caves, mountains, valleys, trees and historic relics.

Covering in an area of 10,000 ha, Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex includes Trang An Eco-tourist Site, Tam Coc- Bich Dong Landscape and Hoa Lu Ancient Citadel. Trang An Eco-tourist Site is considered an outdoor geological museum. Bai Dinh Pagoda, which is located in Trang An Eco-tourist Site, is the largest pagoda in Vietnam and Southeast Asia. Tam Coc- Bich Dong is very beautiful in any season, particularly in spring. Hoa Lu is the ancient capital of Viet Nam in the 10th and the 11th century.

Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex is a very unique example of human history, not only for Viet Nam but also for the region. It has a combination of both natural and cultural values.

TEST

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

5. A. ordinary B. pollution C. doctor D. alcohol
 6. A. gather B. there C. ethnic D. although
 7. A. accompany B. fascinating C. discriminate D. scoreboard
 8. A. mutual B. initiate C. picture D. question
- A. sufferings B. disasters C. species D. monuments

II. Choose the word or phrase in the box which has the same meaning as the underlined word/phrase in each of the following sentences.

coffee

stone tortoises Da Nang

Ha Noi

Sai Gon	educational	institution
----------------	--------------------	--------------------

VIETNAM

1. The Vietnamese are especially proud of their historic **capital city**. The old quarter of Ha Noi dates back to the 11th century.
2. Ha Noi's peaceful 'Van Mieu', or Temple of Literature, is Viet Nam's oldest educational institution. The Confucius inspired **university** was established for the education of mandarins.
3. Around the central courtyard of Van Mieu stand 82 stone tortoises. These beautiful ancient **sculptures** were built to honour the men who received doctorates in triennial examinations.
4. While most tourists neglect Viet Nam's fourth- **largest city** in favour of nearby Hue and Hoi An, it has considerable charm in its own right.
5. Another tourists' favourite is Sai Gon which was renamed Ho Chi Minh City following its fall in 1975. However, the **old name** is still used by both Vietnamese and foreigners, especially when referring to the most central part of the city.
6. The Vietnamese love a good cup of coffee. In the central market of Sai Gon, many small shops offer samples of this favourite **beverage**, individually brewed with a small metal French drip filter, and served with condensed milk.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Ha Noi | 2. Educational institution | 3. Stone tortoises |
| 4. Da Nang | 5. Sai Gon | 6. Coffee |

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the passage. One of the seven wonders of the ancient world, the Great Pyramid of Giza was a monument of wisdom and prophecy built as a tomb for Pharaoh Cheops in 2720 BC.

Despite its antiquity, certain aspects of its (1. construct)make it one of truly great wonders of the world. The thirteen-acre structure near the Nile River is a solid mass of stone blocks covered with limestone. Inside are the number (2. hide") passageways and the burial chamber for the pharaoh. It is the largest single structure in the world. The four sides of the pyramid are aligned almost exactly on true north, south, east, and west - an (3. credible) engineering feat, the ancient Egyptians were sun worshippers and great astronomers, so computations for the Great Pyramid were based on astronomical (4. observe)

..... Explorations and detailed examinations of the base of the structure reveal many intersecting lines. Further (5 . science) study indicates that these represent a type of timeline of events - past, present and future. Many of the events have been (6. interpret) and found to coincide with known facts of the past. Others are prophesied for the future generations anti are currently under (7. investigate) Many believe that pyramids have supernatural powers and this one is no exception. Some (8. research)even associate it with extraterrestrial beings of the ancient past. Was this superstructure made by ordinary beings, or one built by a race far superior to any known today?

1. construction

2. hidden

3. incredible

4. observations

5. scientific

6. interpreted

7. investigation

8. researchers

IV. Read the passage and choose the correct answer.

Two great things about Hoi An's Old Town are that it is (1).....enough to get around in on foot and the traffic is nowhere near as heavy as in bigger cities. Some of the streets only (2) bike and motorbike traffic and some are (3)only. These factors make Hoi An even more inviting for most travelers to Viet Nam, especially those who have passed through frenetic Ho Chi Minh City (aka Sai Gon) or Ha Noi.

Many buildings in the Old Town were constructed over a century ago and feature strong Chinese influences stemming (4) merchants from Guangzhou, Fujian, Chiu Chow and Hainan. Some of the wooden signboards bearing the company names are carved and gilded in Chinese characters, f5V..... the strong presence of the Chinese in Hoi An ever since its (6) times. Tradition is still very much alive in the Old Town. Even though many of the old shops have been converted to modern businesses aimed at tourists including countless tailors, souvenir shops, art galleries, restaurants and (7), all have been converted (8) care to preserve the past.

Happily, all Hoi An's major attractions or (9) are located within walking distance of each other including the Japanese covered bridge, the Chinese assembly halls, Guan Yin Temple, the museum of history and culture and the Tran (10) Home and chapel.

1. A.		B. large	C. wide	D. narrow
-------	--	----------	---------	-----------

small			
2. A. permit	B. allow	C. authorize	D. ask
3. A. walker	B. pedestrian	C. people	D. tourist
4. A. on	B. in	C. of	D. from
5. A. to reflect	B. reflected	C. reflecting	D. being reflected
6. A. advantage	B. strong	C. prosperity	D. benefit
7. A. coffee	B. café	C. café noir	D. Cafeteria
8. A. with	B. into	C. of	D. on
9. A. ground	B. land	C. landmark	D. yard
10. A. familiar	B. familiarity	C. familiarize	D. family

V. There are 10 mistakes in this passage. Find out and correct them.

	Your corrections
... Another man-made beach completed our list. The name	1. ... complete
Bai Chay can be explain in a historic story. This is where the	2..... explained
supplying ships of the invading Mongol force attacked and	3 was attacked
burnt by Vietnamese people in the 13 th century. Some burnt	4 into
ships were drifted to the island, setting the forest the along	5 on
	6 wide
	7 the most
	8 with
	9 in
	10..... who

beach a fire, hence the name (Bai Chay in Vietnamese t
means “Burning Beach”).
Bai Chay Beach is only 500 meters long but about 100
meters widely. Of the five beaches, this is most crowded yet
vibrant one. It is packed of several restaurants specializing
for seafood, a water-puppet theater, a traditional music
theater, a theme park... There is also surfing and motorboats
for those people love sports. e

VI. Write full sentences to make a passage, using the suggested words and phrases given.

Dear Hien,

1. We / have / interesting / time / Hoi An / . /
2. The streets / here / narrow / that / cars / not / allow / center / town / . /
3. Therefore / , / we / have / walk / . / The / houses / very / old / but / beautiful / . /
4. However / , / I / not / like / way / they / business / here / . /
5. It / seem / that / every / house / shop / sell / souvenirs / and / other stuffs / . /
6. The people / very / friend / and / help / . /
7. The / food / look / fun / but / it / taste / quite / nice / . /
8. I / not / have / buy / anything / you / . /
9. But / I / buy / you / some / little / colour / lanterns / . /
10. See / you / next week / . /

Love,

Mathew

Dear Hien,

We are having an interesting time in Hoi An. The streets here are so narrow that cars are not allowed to the center of the town. Therefore we have to walk. The houses are very old beautiful. However, I don't like the way they do business here. It seems that every house has a shop to sell souvenirs and other stuffs. The people are very friendly and helpful. The food looks funny but it tastes quite nice. I haven't bought anything for you. But I will buy you some little colourful lanterns.

See you next week.

Love,

Mathew

VIETNAM: THEN AND NOW (UNIT 6)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>Annoyed (adj)</i>	/ə'noɪd/	Bực mình, khó chịu	<i>Nuclear family (n)</i>	/'nju:klɪə/ /'fæmɪli/	Gia đình hạt nhân
<i>Astonished (adj)</i>	/əs'tɒnɪʃt/	Kinh ngạc	<i>Photo exhibition (n)</i>	/'fəʊtəʊ/ /,eksɪ'biʃən/	Triển lãm ảnh
<i>Boom (n)</i>	/bu:m/	Bùng nổ	<i>Pedestrian (n)</i>	/pɪ'destrɪən/	Người đi bộ
<i>Compartment (n)</i>	/kəm'pɑ:tmənt/	Toa xe	<i>Roof (n)</i>	/ru:f/	Mái nhà
<i>Clanging (n)</i>	/'klæŋŋ/	Tiếng leng keng	<i>Rubber (n)</i>	/'rʌbə/	Cao su
<i>Cooperative (adj)</i>	/kəʊ'ɒpərətɪv/	Hợp tác	<i>Sandals (n)</i>	/'sændlɪz/	Dép
<i>Elevated walkway (n)</i>	/'elɪveɪtɪd/ /'wɔ:kweɪ/	Lối đi dành cho người đi bộ	<i>Thatched house (n)</i>	/θætʃt/ /haus/	Nhà tranh mái lá
<i>Exporter (n)</i>	/eks'pɔ:tə/	Nước xuất khẩu, người xuất khẩu	<i>Tiled (adj)</i>	/taɪld/	Lợp ngói, bằng ngói
<i>Extended family (n)</i>	/ɪks'tendɪd/ /'fæmɪli/	Gia đình nhiều thế hệ cùng sống chung	<i>Tram (n)</i>	/træm/	Xe điện, tàu điện
<i>Flyover (n)</i>	/'flaɪ,əʊvə/	Cầu vượt	<i>Trench (n)</i>	/trenʃ/	Hào giao thông
<i>Manual (adj)</i>	/'mænʃʊəl/	Làm bằng tay	<i>Tunnel (n)</i>	/'tʌnl/	Đường hầm, cống ngầm
<i>Mushroom (n)</i>	/'mʌʃrʊm/	Mọc lên như nấm	<i>Underpass (n)</i>	/'ʌndəpɑ:s/	Đường hầm cho người đi bộ qua đường
<i>Noticeable (adj)</i>	/'nəʊtɪsəbl/	Gây chú ý, đáng chú ý			

II. Grammar:

- Review past perfect
- Adjective + that clause
- Adjective + to-infinitive

III. PRONUNCIATION: *stress on all the words in the sentences*

B. EXERCISES

I. Put the words into two groups /ɔɪ/ and /aʊ/

- | | | | | |
|---|----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 | A. Surround | B. Manual | C. Railroad | D. Nuclear |
| 2 | A. Compartment | B. Pedestrian | C. Convenience | D. Fascinate |
| 3 | A. Significant | B. Population | C. Astonishment | D. Cooperative |
| 4 | A. Elevate | B. Popular | C. Tolerant | D. Equipment |
| 5 | A. Environment | B. Technology | C. Agriculture | D. associate |

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- 1 In a traditional family, there were three _____.: grandparents, parents, and children.
A. Groups B. Teams C. Bands D. Generations
- 2 It was very _____ that a couple in the past could have about 5 to 10 children.
A. Popular B. Common C. Shared D. Obvious
- 3 Along with our need for love, our most important need is the need for _____.
A. Appreciation B. Value C. Importance D. Increase
- 4 The metro will _____ Ben Thanh Market in the central area to the amusement park at Suoi Tien in District 9.
A. Join B. Contact C. Connect D. Relate
- 5 Ho Chi Minh City plans to use the state budget funds to build ten more flyover _____.
A. Systems B. Sets C. Methods D. Routes
- 6 It is not _____ for men to wear the traditional costumes in modern life.
A. Certain B. Surprised C. Pleased D. Convenient
- 7 It is not _____ for a particular vehicle to exist, to be loved for generations.
A. Fun B. Glad C. Relieved D. easy
- 8 Used throughout the 19th century in _____ classrooms, the slate has been used for students to write the answers to the problems.
A. Most of B. Almost C. Nearly all D. Hardly ever
- 9 The sound of firecracker was common on previous Tet, but is now prohibited _____ being dangerous and unsafe in production and distribution.
A. Because B. Due to C. Despite D. for
- 10 They _____ a five-day tour in Malaysia before they enjoyed the Tet festival last year.
A. Spend B. Spent C. Had spent D. Would spend

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

1. There has been a _____ increase in high-rise buildings over the last five years. CONSIDER
2. We really like the photo _____ in the school's 70th EXHIBIT anniversary.
3. Nowadays it is easy to get to the _____ areas by tram. SUBURB
4. Our country became totally _____ in 1975 after decades of fighting for freedom. DEPEND
5. We have lived in an _____ family for over twenty years. EXTENSION
6. The numbers of private cars on the roads has increased _____ since 2010. DRAMATIC
7. All of us were _____ to hear that he had passed the driving test at the fourth attempt. RELIEF
8. In my opinion, a good doctor is always _____ to his patients. SYMPATHY
9. We are proud that our country has become one of the world's _____ largest rice. EXPORT
10. These are the most _____ shoes I have ever worn. I like them very much. COMFORT

IV. Put the verbs in the brackets in the present perfect tense, past simple tense or past perfect tense.

1. When the waiter finally (arrive) _____ with the food, the guests (already leave) _____ the restaurant.
2. I cannot see Mr. Khoa. He (just park) _____ in front of the supermarket.
3. The Smiths (spend) _____ two days in Hanoi before they (travel) _____ to Sa Pa last week.
4. His bicycle wasn't there because someone (take) _____ it without asking him.
5. My brother (not call) _____ us since he (move) _____ to Ho Chi Minh City last month.
6. Why your father (lock) _____ all the windows before he went to bed?
7. Tom (break) _____ his leg after he (fall) _____ off through the rock.
8. Nam (not know) _____ who the man was. He (not see) _____ him before in his life.
9. Oh! You (paint) _____ the kitchen. I like the colour.
10. My uncle (visit) _____ over 20 countries by the time he was 30 years old. V.

Combine the following sentences by completing the second.

1. Family members care for each other. It is essential for that.
It is essential _____
2. Families are the place where we learn values, skills, and behavior. We are aware of that.
We are are _____
3. Parents should guide their children into the world outside the home. It is certain about that.
It is certain _____
4. Strong families have a sense of loyalty and devotion toward family members. We are conscious of that.

We are conscious _____

5. The family is a place of shelter for individual family members. It is sure about that.

It is sure _____

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

During the war, children wore straw hats to (1) _____ themselves from shrapnel. Houses and schools were bombed and destroyed. Many children were made (2) _____ and their schools had to be moved around or lessons sometimes had to (3) _____ place after dark to avoid being targeted by heavy bombing.

One school in the port city of Hai Phong had its roof (3) _____ with several layers of straw to withstand the (4) _____ of the bombs. Life for children was very hard in both the North and South of Vietnam during the war.

Young people were (5) _____ of their duty to serve their country. Even young girls took part in the war efforts by constructing bomb shelters. Children took first-aid courses after school so that they could (6) _____ injured people. Children years of children born in the 1960s are (7) _____. As innocent children, they went to school (8) _____ straw hats in the sounds of American jet fighters in the sky and the shots from Vietnamese anti-aircraft guns.

Nowadays, they are proud that they came through those hardships. They had their heads held (10) _____ walking out of the war.

1. A. Save B. Keep C. Protect D. Help
2. A. Homemade B. Homeless C. Homelessness D. Homesick
3. A. Place B. Take place C. Be happened D. Exist
4. A. Cover B. Covering C. Covered D. Being covered
5. A. Reasons B. Causes C. Actions D. Impacts
6. A. Known B. Afraid C. Capable D. Aware
7. A. Care for B. Take after C. Take care about D. Deal
8. A. Unfortunate B. Unforgettable C. Forgettable D. Memorably
9. A. Wear B. To wear C. Wearing D. That wear
10. A. High B. Highly C. Height D. above

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Street Food Shoulder Poles on Saigon streets.

Street food shoulder pole is familiar with Saigon people throughout many years. Nowadays it has become a special thing that makes travelers curious. In small area of District 1 and District 3, we could count more than 100 vendors who earned money using shoulder poles. A shoulder pole, also called a carrying pole, is a yoke of wood or bamboo, used by people to carry a load. The vendors put their goods in two baskets from each ends of the yoke.

In the downtown, we can meet young women with their shoulder pole. The baskets were covered by plastic wrap carefully to protect the foods from the street dust. In a tight space of one basket, she could mix the ingredients and baked the cake on a small charcoal which defended by carton. The ready cakes were put in other basket.

In the morning or evening, on rainy or sunny day, Saigon streets are marked by shoulder poles of people from different regions of the country, has become a unique part of Saigon. It has been said that it isn't hard to live in Saigon if you work hard. With the carrying pole on shoulders, the vendor has turned it into a "store". The reason is very simple, they haven't enough money to open a real store. Everyday these woman continue their journey through Saigon streets under the sun and the rain, sell cheap things or street foods to earn money and feed their children.

1. A shoulder pole _____

- A. is a bar made of wood or bamboo
- B. used to be called a carrying pole
- C. is the connection between wood and bamboo
- D. is used to put goods on street vendors' shoulders

2. Street food shoulder pole is

- A. a way for passers-by to have food
- B. a characteristic of District 1 and 3
- C. used to make foreign travelers curious
- D. used by street vendors to carry things

3. All of the following are true about shoulder poles EXCEPT that _____.

- A. street vendors can bake cakes there
- B. they can contain enough things to serve some customers
- C. the two baskets have the same function
- D. they can be protected from dust

4. All of the following are benefits of shoulder poles EXCEPT that _____.

- A. they can help street vendors to sell many things without a store
- B. women are marked by unique shoulder poles from different regions.
- C. it s a way for street vendors to carry goods around the streets
- D. street vendors can support their families with the help of shoulder poles

5. The word "yoke" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. a long piece of wood that is fastened across the necks to pull heavy loads
- B. a wooden bar that is connected to the vehicles to loads so that they can be pulled away
- C. something that connects two things or people, usually in a way that limits freedom
- D. a piece of wood that is shaped to fit across a person's shoulders to carry two equal loads

VIII. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.

1. My sister had worked in the bank for five years before she had been sent to Da Nang.

A B C D

2. Tom said that he had been very excited visiting Ha Long Bay for the first time in 2005.

A B C D

3. The country has significant changed since we came here in 2007.

A B C D

4. All of us are astonished that life in the countryside to improve a lot.

A B C D

5. By the time she left the shop, she spent all of her money on clothes.

A B C D

IX. Write a paragraph of around 100 words about three advantages of the Internet. Use the following information to help you Good source of information

An effective means of communication

A wonderful of entertainment

KEY TO VIETNAM: THEN AND NOW (UNIT 6)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. Put the words into two groups /ɔɪ/ and /aʊ/

- | | | | | |
|---|----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 | A. Surround | B. Manual | C. Railroad | D. Nuclear |
| 2 | A. Compartment | B. Pedestrian | C. Convenience | D. Fascinate |
| 3 | A. Significant | B. Population | C. Astonishment | D. Cooperative |
| 4 | A. Elevate | B. Popular | C. Tolerant | D. Equipment |
| 5 | A. Environment | B. Technology | C. Agriculture | D. associate |

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- In a traditional family, there were three _____.: grandparents, parents, and children.
A. Groups B. Teams C. Bands D. Generations
- It was very _____ that a couple in the past could have about 5 to 10 children.
A. Popular B. Common C. Shared D. Obvious
- Along with our need for love, our most important need is the need for _____.
A. Appreciation B. Value C. Importance D. Increase
- The metro will _____ Ben Thanh Market in the central area to the amusement park at Suoi Tien in District 9.
A. Join B. Contact C. Connect D. Relate
- Ho Chi Minh City plans to use the state budget funds to build ten more flyover _____.
A. Systems B. Sets C. Methods D. Routes
- It is not _____ for men to wear the traditional costumes in modern life.
A. Certain B. Surprised C. Pleased D. Convenient
- It is not _____ for a particular vehicle to exist, to be loved for generations.
A. Fun B. Glad C. Relieved D. easy
- Used throughout the 19th century in _____ classrooms, the slate has been used for students to write the answers to the problems.
A. Most of B. Almost C. Nearly all D. Hardly ever
- The sound of firecracker was common on previous Tet, but is now prohibited _____ being dangerous and unsafe in production and distribution.
A. Because B. Due to C. Despite D. for
- They _____ a five-day tour in Malaysia before they enjoyed the Tet festival last year.
A. Spend B. Spent C. Had spent D. Would spend

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

- There has been a _____ increase in high-rise buildings CONSIDERABLE
over the last five years.
- We really like the photo _____ in the school's 70th EXHIBITION
anniversary.

3. Nowadays it is easy to get ot the _____ areas by tram. SUBURBAN
4. Our country became totally _____ in 1975 after decades of fighting for freedom. INDEPENDENT
5. We have lived in an _____ family for over twenty years. EXTENDED
6. The numbers of private cars on the roads has increased _____ since 2010. DRAMATICALLY
7. All of us were _____ to hear that he had passed the driving test at the fourth attempt. RELIEVED
8. In my opinion, a good doctor is always _____ to his patients. SYMPATHETIC
9. We are proud that our country has become one of the world _____ largest rice. EXPORTERS
10. These are the most _____ shoes I have ever worn. I like _____ them very much. COMFORTABLE

IV. Put the verbs in the brackets in the present perfect tense, past simple tense or past perfect tense.

1. When the waiter finally (arrive) **arrived** with the food, the guests (already leave) **had already left** the restaurant.
2. I cannot see Mr.Khoa. He (just park) **has just parked** in front of the supermarket.
3. The Smiths (spend) **had spent** two days in Hanoi before they (travel) **travelled** to Sa Pa last week.
4. His bicycle wasn't there because someone (take) **had taken** it without asking him.
5. My brother (not call) **hasn't called** us since he (move) **moved** to Ho Chi Minh City last month.
6. Why your father (lock) **had your father locked** all the windows before he went to bed?
7. Tom (break) **broke** his leg after he (fall) **had fallen** off through the rock.
8. Nam (not know) **didn't know** who the man was. He (not see) **hadn't seen** him before in his life.
9. Oh! You (paint) **have painted** the kitchen. I like the colour.
10. My uncle (visit) **had visited** over 20 countries by the time he was 30 years old.

V. Combine the following sentences by completing the second.

1. Family members care for each other. It is essential for that.
It is essential _____
2. Families are the place where we learn values, skills, and behavior. We are aware of that.
We are are _____
3. Parents should guide their children into the world outside the home. It is certain about that.
It is certain _____
4. Strong families have a sense of loyalty and devotion toward family members. We are conscious of that.

We are conscious _____

5. The family is a place of shelter for individual family members. It is sure about that.

It is sure _____

1. It is essential that family members care for each other.
2. We are aware that families are the place where we learn values, skills, and behavior.
3. It is certain that parents should guide their children into the world outside the home.
4. We are conscious that strong families have a sense of loyalty and devotion toward family members.
5. It is sure that the family is a place of shelter for individual family members.

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

During the war, children wore straw hats to (1)_____ themselves from shrapnel. Houses and schools were bombed and destroyed. Many children were made (2) _____ and their schools had to be moved around or lessons sometimes had to (3) _____ place after dark to avoid being targeted by heavy bombing.

One school in the port city of Hai Phong had its roof (3)_____ with several layers of straw to withstand the (4) _____ of the bombs. Life for children was very hard in both the North and South of Vietnam during the war.

Young people were (5) _____ of their duty to serve their country. Even young girls took part in the war efforts by constructing bomb shelters. Children took first-aid courses after school so that they could (6) _____ injured people. Children years of children born in the 1960s are (7) _____. As innocent children, they went to school (8) _____ straw hats in the sounds of American jet fighters in the sky and the shots from Vietnamese anti-aircraft guns.

Nowadays, they are proud that they came through those hardships. They had their heads held (10) _____ walking out of the war.

1. A. Save B. Keep C. **Protect** D. Help
2. A. Homemade B. **Homeless** C. Homelessness D. Homesick
3. A. Place B. **Take place** C. Be happened D. Exist
4. A. Cover B. Covering C. **Covered** D. Being covered
5. A. Reasons B. Causes C. Actions D. **Impacts**
6. A. Known B. Afraid C. Capable D. **Aware**
7. A. **Care for** B. Take after C. Take care about D. Deal
8. A. Unfortunate B. **Unforgettable** C. Forgettable D. Memorably
9. A. Wear B. To wear C. **Wearing** D. That wear
10. A. **High** B. Highly C. Height D. above

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Street food shoulder pole is familiar with Saigon people throughout many years.

Street food shoulder pole is familiar with Saigon people throughout many years. Nowadays it has become a special thing that makes travelers curious. In small area of District 1 and District 3, we could count more than 100 vendors who earned money using shoulder poles. A shoulder pole,

also called a carrying pole, is a yoke of wood or bamboo, used by people to carry a load. The vendors put their goods in two baskets from each ends of the yoke.

In the downtown, we can meet young women with their shoulder pole. The baskets were covered by plastic wrap carefully to protect the foods from the street dust. In a tight space of one basket, she could mix the ingredients and baked the cake on a small charcoal which defended by carton. The ready cakes were put in other basket.

In the morning or evening, on rainy or sunny day, Saigon streets are marked by shoulder poles of people from different regions of the country, has become a unique part of Saigon. It has been said that it isn't hard to live in Saigon if you work hard. With the carrying pole on shoulders, the vendor has turned it into a "store". The reason is very simple, they haven't enough money to open a real store. Everyday these woman continue their journey through Saigon streets under the sun and the rain, sell cheap things or street foods to earn money and feed their children.

1. A shoulder pole _____

- A. is a bar made of wood or bamboo
- B. used to be called a carrying pole
- C. is the connection between wood and bamboo
- D. is used to put goods on street vendors' shoulders

2. Street food shoulder pole is

- A. a way for passers-by to have food
- B. a characteristic of District 1 and 3
- C. used to make foreign travelers curious
- D. used by street vendors to carry things

3. All of the following are true about shoulder poles EXCEPT that _____.

- A. street vendors can bake cakes there
- B. they can contain enough things to serve some customers
- C. the two baskets have the same function
- D. they can be protected from dust

4. All of the following are benefits of shoulder poles EXCEPT that _____.

- A. they can help street vendors to sell many things without a store
- B. women are marked by unique shoulder poles from different regions.
- C. it s a way for street vendors to carry goods around the streets
- D. street vendors can support their families with the help of shoulder poles

5. The word "yoke" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. a long piece of wood that is fastened across the necks to pull heavy loads
- B. a wooden bar that is connected to the vehicles to loads so that they can be pulled away
- C. something that connects two things or people, usually in a way that limits freedom

D. a piece of wood that is shaped to fit across a person's shoulders to carry two equal loads **VIII.**

Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.

1. My sister had worked in the bank for five years before she had been sent to Da Nang.

A B C D

2. Tom said that he had been very excited visiting Ha Long Bay for the first time in 2005.

A B C D

3. The country has significant changed since we came here in 2007.

A B C D

4. All of us are astonished that life in the countryside to improve a lot.

A B C D

5. By the time she left the shop, she spent all of her money on clothes.

A B C D

Key

1. D -was

2. C – to visit / to have visited

3. B – significantly

4. D – has improved

5. C – had spent

IX. Write a paragraph of around 100 words about three advantages of the Internet. Use the following information to help you

Good source of information
An effective means of communication
A wonderful of entertainment

TEST - VIETNAM: THEN AND NOW (UNIT 6)

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

1. A. Passeded B. Realizeded C. Wished D. Touched
2. A. Airports B. Suitcases C. Things D. Calculators
3. A. Because B. Nurse C. Horse D. Purpose
4. A. Throughout B. Although C. Right D. Enough
5. A. Justice B. Service C. Practice D. advice

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

1. A. Elegant B. Regional C. Musical D. Important
2. A. Recommend B. Thoroughly C. Travelling D. Fascinate
3. A. Windsurfing B. Equipment C. Amateur D. National
4. A. Coincide B. Community C. Conception D. Committee
5. A. Obedient B. Candidate C. Attendance D. security

III. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

1. Travelling in big cities is becoming more (trouble) _____ everyday.
2. Less public transport is now available because of the (short) _____ of staff.

3. Therefore the roads become (jam) _____ with cars as people drive to work.
4. Because of the volume of traffic, local councils are forced to give (permit) _____ for more roads to be constructed.
5. (Fortune) _____ many houses have to be demolished to make ways for the roads.
6. So people are being (home) _____ in the suburbs and have to commute to work.
7. This leads to more pressure being put on the (adequate) _____ of public transport system.
8. But travelling by public transport is very (attract) _____ as there are long delays.
9. The (frequent) _____ of the trains and the buses causes frustration and annoyance.
10. Unless something is done about unemployment, the _____ for the future is not good.

IV. Choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the sentence.

1. Vietnam today is experiencing tremendous growth and, over the last decade, _____ one of the strongest economies in Asia.
A. Have boasted B. Has boasted C. Is boasted D. Are boasted
2. In the past, most of the school students didn't often wear uniform like they _____ today.
A. Did B. Had C. Do D. Have
3. Vietnamese people's quality of life has been _____ improved year by year.
A. Significantly B. Significant C. Signify D. Significance
4. The traffic system in our city _____ in the last decade.
A. Had gradually B. Has gradually C. Has gradual D. Has gradually been been upgraded upgraded been upgraded upgraded
5. Many foreigners were astonished that Hanoi City was quite _____ what they saw five years ago.
A. Different on B. Different from C. Different of D. Different about
6. There _____ many recent breakthroughs in technology. Now consumers can purchase the latest high tech toys. This was not possible even a few years ago.
A. Are B. Had been C. Have been D. Has been
7. Many cities cannot easily create more parks because most land is already _____ for buildings, roads, parking lots, and other essential parts of the urban environment.
A. Being used B. Used C. Using D. Getting used
8. Technology has led to a shift in _____. Prior to this, our high tech phones were not possible.
A. How we did thing B. How we did C. How we do D. How we do things
things thing

V. Write full sentences to make a passage, using the suggested words.

1. Children's/ education/ be/ change/ rapid/ today.
2. In/ past/, / teachers / make/ children/ sit/ still/ hours.
3. They/ make/ children/ memory/ all/ sort/ things.
4. They/ have/ listen/ and/ write down/ all/ words/ teachers/ read/ books.
5. In other words/ ,/ children/ have/ go on/ repeat/ things/ until/ they/ know/ them/ heart.
6. Today/ ,/ many teachers/ wonder/ if/ it's/ possible/ make/ children/ learn/ at all.
7. They/ say/ you/ can/ only/ help/ how/ learn.

8. They/ say/ you/ must/ let/ children/ learn/ and/ discover/ things/ their/ understand/ themselves.
key

VI. Read the text below and decide which option A, B, C or D best fits each space In

Vietnam nowadays, most companies spend a large proportion of their budgets persuading us to buy their products, and it is their (1) _____ executives who have to decide how to make consumers aware of new products. To do this, they usually set up an advertising (2) _____ of some kind. Generally, (3) _____ a new product involves TV and radio commercials, and there may also be large advertisements on (4) _____ along motorways and major roads.

In the past, companies employed people to sell the product (5) _____ but nowadays there is a far more popular technique which uses the telephone. Staff in large call centers telephone potential (6) _____, tell them about the product and try to convince them that it is worth buying. Another technique is to (7) _____ the new product by post. The company sends colourful (8) _____ to every house even though people haven't asked for them. They are so unpopular that people call them (9) _____ mail – and even though they may contain free (10) _____ or discount vouchers many people just put them straight into the rubbish bin!

1. A. Selling B. Publicity C. Marketing D. Propaganda
2. A. Program B. Campaign C. Approach D. Operation
3. A. Starting B. Commencing C. Launching D. Beginning
4. A. Hoardings B. Boards C. Displays D. Screens
5. A. In person B. To face C. At hand D. On show
6. A. Shoppers B. Investors C. Buyers D. Customers
7. A. Promote B. Sponsor C. Support D. Demonstrate
8. A. Catalogues B. Prospectuses C. Reviews D. Journals
9. A. Rubbish B. Garbage C. Junk D. Waste
10. A. Samples B. Tests C. Pieces D. bits

VII. Complete the summary below of the reading passage. Choose one or two words from the reading passage for each answer. Write your answer in boxes 1-5

Paper is different from other waste produce because it comes from a sustainable resource

Paper is different from other waste produce because it comes from a sustainable resource: trees. Unlike the minerals and oil used to make plastics and metals, trees are replaceable. Paper is also biodegradable, so it does not pose as much threat to the environment when it is discarded. While 45 out of every 100 tones of wood fiber used to make paper in Australia comes from waste paper, the rest comes directly from virgin fiber from forests and plantations. By world standards this is a good performance since the world-wide average is 33 per cent waste paper. Governments have encouraged waste paper collection and sorting schemes and at the same time, the paper industry has responded by developing new recycling technologies that have paved the way for even greater utilization of used fiber. As a result, industry's use of recycled fibers is expected to increase at twice the rate of virgin fiber over the coming years.

Already, waste paper constitutes 70% of paper used for packaging and advances in the technology required to remove ink from the paper have allowed a higher recycled content in newsprint and writing paper. To achieve the benefits of recycling, the community must also contribute. We need to accept a change in the quality of paper products; for example stationery may be less white and of a rougher texture. There also needs to be support from the community for waste paper collection programs. Not only do we need to make the paper available to

collectors but it also needs to be separated into different types and sorted from contaminants such as staples, paperclips, string and other miscellaneous items.

SUMMARY

From the point of view of recycling, paper has two advantages over minerals and oil in that firstly it comes from a resource which is (1)..... and secondly it is less threatening to our environment when we throw it away because it is (2)..... Although Australia's record in the re-use of waste paper is good, it is still necessary to use a combination of recycled fiber and virgin to make new paper. The paper industry has contributed positively and people have also been encouraged by (3)..... to collect their waste on a regular basis. One major difficulty is the removal of ink from used paper but advances are being made in this area. However, we need to learn to accept paper which is generally of a lower (4) than before and to sort our waste paper by removing (5) before discarding it for collection.

Key - TEST - VIETNAM: THEN AND NOW (UNIT 6)

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

1. A. Passeded B. Realized C. Wisheded D. Toucheded
2. A. Airports B. Suitcasess C. Thingss D. Calculatorss
3. A. Because B. Nurses C. Horses D. Purposes
4. A. Throughout B. Although C. Right D. Enough
5. A. Justice B. Service C. Practice D. advice

II. Choose the word whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest. Circle the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

1. A. Elegant B. Regional C. Musical D. Important
2. A. Recommend B. Thoroughly C. Travelling D. Fascinate
3. A. Windsurfing B. Equipment C. Amateur D. National
4. A. Coincide B. Community C. Conception D. Committee
5. A. Obedient B. Candidate C. Attendance D. security

III. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

1. Travelling in big cities is becoming more (trouble) _____troublesome_____ everyday.
2. Less public transport is now available because of the (short) _____shortage_____ of staff.
3. Therefore the roads become (jam) _____jam-packed_____ with cars as people drive to work.
4. Because of the volume of traffic, local councils are forced to give (permit) _____permits_____ for more roads to be constructed.
5. (Fortune) _____Unfortunately_____ many houses have to be demolished to make ways for the roads.
6. So people are being (home) _____homed_____ in the suburbs and have to commute to work.
7. This leads to more pressure being put on the (adequate) _____adequacy_____ of public transport system.

8. But travelling by public transport is very (attract) _____unattractive_____ as there are long delays.
9. The (frequent) _____infrequency_____ of the trains and the buses causes frustration and annoyance.
10. Unless something is done about unemployment, the _____outlook_____ for the future is not good.

IV. Choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the sentence.

1. Vietnam today is experiencing tremendous growth and, over the last decade, _____ one of the strongest economies in Asia.
A. Have boasted B. **Has boasted** C. Is boated D. Are boasted
2. In the past, most of the school students didn't often wear uniform like they _____ today.
A. Did B. Had C. **Do** D. Have
3. Vietnamese people's quality of life has been _____ improved year by year.
A. **Significantly** B. Significant C. Signify D. Significance
4. The traffic system in our city _____ in the last decade.
A. Had gradually B. Has gradually C. Has gradual D. Has **gradually** been been upgraded upgraded been upgraded upgraded
5. Many foreigners were astonished that Hanoi City was quite _____ what they saw five years ago.
A. Different on B. **Different** from C. Different of D. Different about
6. There _____ many recent breakthroughs in technology. Now consumers can purchase the latest high tech toys. This was not possible even a few years ago.
A. Are B. Had been C. **Have** been D. Has been
7. Many cities cannot easily create more parks because most land is already _____ for buildings, roads, parking lots, and other essential parts of the urban environment.
A. **Being used** B. Used C. Using D. Getting used
8. Technology has led to a shift in _____. Prior to this, our high tech phones were not possible.
A. How we did thing B. How we did C. How we do D. **How we do things** things thing

V. Write full sentences to make a passage, using the suggested words.

1. Children's/ education/ be/ change/ rapid/ today.
2. In/ past/, / teachers / make/ children/ sit/ still/ hours.
3. They/ make/ children/ memory/ all/ sort/ things.
4. They/ have/ listen/ and/ write down/ all/ words/ teachers/ read/ books.
5. In other words/ ,/ children/ have/ go on/ repeat/ things/ until/ they/ know/ them/ heart.
6. Today/ ,/ many teachers/ wonder/ if/ it's/ possible/ make/ children/ learn/ at all.
7. They/ say/ you/ can/ only/ help/ how/ learn.
8. They/ say/ you/ must/ let/ children/ learn/ and/ discover/ things/ their/ understand/ themselves.

Children's education is changing rapidly today.

In the past, teachers made children sit still for hours. They made children memorize all sorts of things.

They had to listen and write down all the words the teachers read from the books.

In other words, children had to go on repeating things until they knew them by heart.

Today, many teachers wonder if it's possible to make children learn at all. They say you can only help them how to learn. They say you must let children learn and discover things for their understanding themselves.

VI. Read the text below and decide which option A, B, C or D best fits each space

In Vietnam nowadays, most companies spend a large proportion of their budgets persuading us to buy their products, and it is their (1) _____ executives who have to decide how to make consumers aware of new products. To do this, they usually set up an advertising (2) _____ of some kind. Generally, (3) _____ a new product involves TV and radio commercials, and there may also be large advertisements on (4) _____ along motorways and major roads.

In the past, companies employed people to sell the product (5) _____ but nowadays there is a far more popular technique which uses the telephone. Staff in large call centers telephone potential (6) _____, tell them about the product and try to convince them that it is worth buying. Another technique is to (7) _____ the new product by post. The company sends colourful (8) _____ to every house even though people haven't asked for them. They are so unpopular that people call them (9) _____ mail – and even though they may contain free (10) _____ or discount vouchers many people just put them straight into the rubbish bin!

- | | | | | |
|-----|---------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. | A. Selling | B. Publicity | C. Marketing | D. Propaganda |
| 2. | A. Program | B. Campaign | C. Approach | D. Operation |
| 3. | A. Starting | B. Commencing | C. Launching | D. Beginning |
| 4. | A. Hoardings | B. Boards | C. Displays | D. Screens |
| 5. | A. In person | B. To face | C. At hand | D. On show |
| 6. | A. Shoppers | B. Investors | C. Buyers | D. Customers |
| 7. | A. Promote | B. Sponsor | C. Support | D. Demonstrate |
| 8. | A. Catalogues | B. Prospectuses | C. Reviews | D. Journals |
| 9. | A. Rubbish | B. Garbage | C. Junk | D. Waste |
| 10. | A. Samples | B. Tests | C. Pieces | D. bits |

VII. Complete the summary below of the reading passage. Choose one or two words from the reading passage for each answer. Write your answer in boxes 1-5

Paper is different from other waste produce because it comes from a sustainable resource: trees. Unlike the minerals and oil used to make plastics and metals, trees are replaceable. Paper is also biodegradable, so it does not pose as much threat to the environment when it is discarded. While 45 out of every 100 tones of wood fiber used to make paper in Australia comes from waste paper, the rest comes directly from virgin fiber from forests and plantations. By world standards this is a good performance since the world-wide average is 33 per cent waste paper. Governments have encouraged waste paper collection and sorting schemes and at the same time, the paper industry has responded by developing new recycling technologies that have paved the way for even greater utilization of used fiber. As a result, industry's use of recycled fibers is expected to increase at twice the rate of virgin fiber over the coming years.

Already, waste paper constitutes 70% of paper used for packaging and advances in the technology required to remove ink from the paper have allowed a higher recycled content in

newsprint and writing paper. To achieve the benefits of recycling, the community must also contribute. We need to accept a change in the quality of paper products; for example stationery may be less white and of a rougher texture. There also needs to be support from the community for waste paper collection programs. Not only do we need to make the paper available to collectors but it also needs to be separated into different types and sorted from contaminants such as staples, paperclips, string and other miscellaneous items.

SUMMARY

From the point of view of recycling, paper has two advantages over minerals and oil in that firstly it comes from a resource which is (1).....sustainable/replaceable..... and secondly it is less threatening to our environment when we throw it away because it is (2).....biodegradable..... Although Australia's record in the re-use of waste paper is good, it is still necessary to use a combination of recycled fiber and virgin to make new paper. The paper industry has contributed positively and people have also been encouraged by (3).....governments/ the government..... to collect their waste on a regular basis. One major difficulty is the removal of ink from used paper but advances are being made in this area. However, we need to learn to accept paper which is generally of a lower (4)quality..... than before and to sort our waste paper by removing (5)contaminants..... before discarding it for collection.

RECIPES AND EATING HABITS (UNIT 7)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>Chop (v)</i>	/tʃɒp/	Chặt	<i>Spread (v)</i>	/spred/	Phết
<i>Cube (n)</i>	/kju:b/	Miếng hình lập phương	<i>Sprinkle (v)</i>	/'sprɪŋkl/	Rắc
<i>Deep-fry (v)</i>	/,di:p 'fraɪ/	Rán ngập mỡ	<i>Slice (v)</i>	/slaɪs/	Cắt lát
<i>Dip (v)</i>	/dɪp/	Nhúng	<i>Staple (n)</i>	/'steɪpl/	Lương thực chính
<i>Drain (v)</i>	/dreɪn/	Làm ráo nước	<i>Starter (n)</i>	/'sta:tə(r)/	Món khai vị
<i>Garnish (v)</i>	/'ga:nɪʃ/	Trang trí (món ăn)	<i>Steam (v)</i>	/sti:m/	Hấp
<i>Grate (v)</i>	/greɪt/	Nạo	<i>Stew (v)</i>	/stju: /	Hầm
<i>Grill (v)</i>	/grɪl/	Nướng	<i>Stir-fry (v)</i>	/'stɜ: fraɪ/	Xào
<i>Marinate (v)</i>	/'mæɪneɪt/	Ướp	<i>Tender (adj)</i>	/'tendə(r)/	Mềm
<i>Peel (v)</i>	/pi:l/	Gọt vỏ, bóc vỏ	<i>Versatile (adj)</i>	/'vɜ:sətaɪl/	Đa dụng
<i>Purée (v)</i>	/'pjʊəreɪ/	Xay nhuyễn	<i>Whisk (v)</i>	/wɪsk/	Đánh (trứng ...)
<i>Roast (v)</i>	/rəʊst/	quay			
<i>Shallot (n)</i>	/ʃə'lɒt/	Hành khô			
<i>Simmer (v)</i>	/'sɪmə(r)/	om			

II. Grammar:

1. Quantifiers: review: a / an / some / any

2. Modal verbs in conditional sentences type 1: can / must / may / might / should

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern

1. A. versatile B. tomato C. marinate D. chocolate
2. A. include B. combine C. balance D. reduce
3. A. cucumber B. ingredient C. opinion D. nutritious
4. A. teaspoon B. cabbage C. pancake D. canteen
5. A. individual B. supermarket C. avocado D. information

II. Match each cooking verb in column A with its definition in column B. Write the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
	1. bake	A. cook something slowly in hot liquid kept at or just below the boiling point (85oC/95oC)
	2. roast	B. cook food in hot oil, or fat
	3. boil	C. cook food over charcoal on a grill
	4. fry	D. cook or brown food, like bread or cheese by exposing it to a grill or fire
	5. steam	E. cook, especially meat, in an oven or over a fire
	6. simmer	F. cook meat and vegetables slowly in liquid in a closed dish or pan
	7. toast	G. fry very quickly over high heat
	8. stir-fry	H. cook in an oven without any extra fat
	9. barbecue	I. cook food in boiling water that is 100oC
	10. stew	J. cook food by heating it in the steam made from boiling water

III. Fill each numbered blank with a, an, some or any

- Mum:** Andy, let's go to the market. Do you have the list?
- Andy:** I'm doing it now. We need (1) _____ apples, (2) _____ bottle of cooking oil and (3) _____ bread. Oh, and there isn't (4) _____ salt either.
- Mum:** Is there (5) _____ milk?
- Andy:** Yes, there's (6) _____ in the fridge. But we haven't got (7) _____ orange juice.
- Mum:** Have we got (8) _____ vegetables?
- Andy:** Well, there is (9) _____ cauliflower, (10) _____ onion and (11) _____ potatoes, but there aren't (12) _____ artichokes.
- Mum:** Ok. Let's go shopping then. But before leaving, you should eat something. Is there (13) _____ fruit?
- Andy:** Yes, Mum, there is (14) _____ banana and (15) _____ orange. But I prefer to have (16) _____ muffin or (17) _____ chocolate.
- Mum:** No way, Andy. You know what I think about fatty food. Have (18) _____ banana and (19) _____ milk.
- Andy:** Ok, but ... Can I have (20) _____ chocolate cake after dinner, please?
- Mum:** We'll see.

IV. Fill each blank in the following sentences with a food quantifier from the box.

A bar of	A bowl of	A bunch of	A can of	A carton of
A clove of	A loaf of	A slice of	A stick of	A tablespoon of

- Add _____ vinegar and 200ml of water into the bowl and mix well.
 - My brother usually has _____ cereal and some milk for breakfast.
 - She bought a grapefruit and _____ bananas at the village market.
 - Mummy, can you give me _____ celery, please?
 - I have a recipe that calls for only _____ garlic.
 - There is _____ bread, some eggs and some salad for dinner.
 - You look thirsty. Would you like _____ soda?
 - Do you want _____ chocolate or five chocolate sweets?
 - Please go to the store and buy _____ milk and if they have sugar, get one kilo.
 - He has eaten _____ pizza, two pieces of cake and three eggs.
- V. Underline the correct verb in each sentence.**
- (Stir/ Drain/ Chop) the carrot into small circles.
 - (Mix/ Boil/ Bake) the lasagna for 30 minutes in the oven.
 - After ten minutes, (drain/ boil/ fry) the spaghetti until there is no water left. Then place the pasta into a large bowl.
 - (Peel/ Stir/ Fry) the onion and throw away the skin.
 - (Drain/ Marinate/ Chop) the steak with salt, pepper and lemon.
 - (Simmer/ Fry/ Bake) the onion until it is soft, but not brown.
 - Constantly (fry/ stir/ boil) the mixture using a wooden spoon.

8. When the mixture looks shiny, (fry/ pour/ chop) it into individual dishes.
9. When you have finished preparing the vegetables, (stir/ mix/ chop) them together with your hands.
10. (Fry/ Bake/ Boil) the spaghetti for ten minutes, or until soft.

VI. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. I didn't eat everything that they _____ me at the party.
A. cooked B. baked C. served D. shared
2. Perhaps the three most popular ice cream _____ are vanilla, chocolate and strawberry.
A. brands B. ingredients C. offers D. flavours
3. Beet greens are the most _____ part of the vegetable and can be cooked like any other dark leafy green.
A. colourful B. nutritious C. traditional D. careful
4. Pumpkin soup is a good source of _____, minerals and vitamins, especially vitamin A.
A. sugars B. solids C. fibres D. fats
5. You _____ chicken. You cook it in an oven or over a fire without liquid.
A. steam B. boil C. fry D. roast
6. You usually _____ vegetables like onion. It means that you cut them into many small pieces.
A. chop B. whisk C. grate D. sprinkle
7. Is there _____ apple juice in the fridge, Quang?
A. An B. a C. any D. some
8. Can I have a pizza, a dozen eggs and a _____ of lemonade, please?
A. bottle B. jar C. piece D. tub
9. I would like a _____ of broccoli and two carrots.
A. bunch B. clove C. slice D. head
10. You should eat more fruits and vegetables if you _____ to lose weight.
A. will want B. want C. would want D. wanted

VII. Fill in each gap in passage with ONE suitable word.

Vietnamese Cooking Habits

The Vietnamese prefer fresh foods, and will rarely (1)_____ ready-made or frozen food. Since Vietnam is an agricultural country, there are many kinds of vegetables and fruits (2)_____. Vietnam also has a long coastal line, which means that there are many kinds of (3)_____ available.

Vietnamese households also prefer cooking and eating at (4)_____. As Vietnam is originally an agricultural country, its culture is a community (5)_____. Therefore, a family may have several (6)_____, and meals are family affairs. (7)_____ they may eat out with their friends after work to (8)_____ those relationships, they still join their families' meals later in the evening.

VIII. Read the passage and match the ideas to the paragraphs. Write the answer in each blank.

- A. Coffee and tea are bad for you.
- B. There are “good” foods and “bad” foods.
- C. Vegetarian food is always healthy.
- D. Fruit juice is good for you.
- E. Carrots helps you see in the dark.
- F. It’s OK not to eat breakfast.

Food: Facts and Myths

1. _____

True and false. Natural fruit juice is good for you, but it can be bad for your teeth. So yeas, have some orange juice with your breakfast or lunch, but don’t drink any juice between meals. Try water instead. Up to eight glasses of water a day is good for you, and water hasn’t got any calories.

2. _____

False. When you sleep, you don’t eat for a long time and in the morning it’s important to start the day with a good breakfast. Without breakfast, you often feel hungry later in the morning and start eating biscuits or chocolate. These sugary snacks are not a good idea. (If you want a healthy snack, try some nuts or melon.)

3. _____

True and false. People drink coffee when they are tired, but it isn’t very healthy so don’t have more than two cups a day and don’t drink any coffee before you go to bed. Tea is generally good for you, but drink it with lemon and put any milk or sugar in it! Green tea is especially healthy.

4. _____

False. Vegetarian dishes often contain a lot of cheese and oil and these can be very fattening. It’s important to eat some vegetables every day. (Doctors say five portions of vegetables and/or fruit). We need the vitamins and minerals, especially from green vegetables.

5. _____

False. Carrots have a lot of vitamins A and vitamin A is good for your eyes, but nobody can really see in the dark!

6. _____

False. There are good and bad diets. For example, real chocolate contains vitamins and minerals and can help you when you are tired. But it also has a lot of sugar, so don’t eat it often. Eat a balanced diet with some rice, pasta, bread or noodles and lots of vegetables and fruit. You also need protein, from meat, grilled fish, cheese or nuts. And you need oil: olive oil and fish oil are particularly good.

IX. Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

From bush food to barbecues

Australia is a huge country and it has a lot of different kinds of food. In the past, the Aboriginal people of Australia ate animals like crocodiles and some insects like the witchetty grub.

Aboriginal Australians travelled around the Australian countryside, or 'bush', to find food.

When the first British and Irish people moved to Australia in the 1830s, they brought sheep and cows from Europe. They also brought traditional English and Irish recipes. Many of these recipes, like fish and chips and meat pies, are still popular today. They also created new Australian recipes such as the *pavlova* (a fruit dessert – named after a Russian dancer) and *dampier* (a bread cooked in the bush).

After 1945, a lot of people came to live in Australia from countries like Italy, Germany, Greece, Thailand and India. They brought recipes with them and Australians began to eat and drink different things. People started to drink espresso coffee and eat Mediterranean and Asian food.

A lot of modern Australians love cooking with fresh food. They often cook food on barbecues in their gardens or on the beach. Today more people also eat Aboriginal food like kangaroo and emu. Mark Olive, an Aboriginal chef, has a popular TV cookery programme about traditional bush food. There are always new recipes to try in Australia!

Task 1. Read the passage again, and decide whether the following statements are true (T), false (F), or not given (NG)

		T	F	NG
1.	Australia doesn't have many different types of food.			
2.	In the past, Aboriginal people found food in different places.			
3.	British and Irish people brought food and recipes to Australia.			
4.	The people who arrived after 1945 didn't like Australian food.			
5.	Australians like food from countries like Italy, Greece, and Thailand.			
6.	Cooking outside is popular in Australia.			
7.	Today many people in Australia eat crocodile.			

Task 2. Find words in the passage that mean ...

1. very big (paragraph 1): _____
2. a name for the first people in Australia (paragraph 1): _____
3. somewhere to cook food outside (paragraph 4): _____

X. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each question Free and Easy

In the past, getting recipes and cooking tips was a complicated process. A person had to go to store and buy a cook book, or get recipes from friends. Fortunately, the Internet has changed all

that. Now, if you want to find a recipe for lasagna or Cobb salad, you just search online. It couldn't be simpler.

Cooking blogs are a great source of information because they are free and there are so many of them. They are also nice because they give all different kinds of ideas. The problems with blogs is that because we don't know who is writing them, we need to use with caution. When you are looking at a new blog, you don't know if the writer knows what he or she is talking about. We'd like to introduce two popular cooking blogs. The first is called Smitten Kitchen. This website is run by a family living in New York City. It focuses on food that doesn't require many ingredients. If you want to make food that is simple but wonderful, then this is the site for you. It offers hundreds and hundreds of recipes, divided into categories. You will be amazed at how many there are.

Wednesday Chef is another great cooking blog. It is run by a writer who lives in Berlin. This blog also offers many recipes, along with recommendations for great restaurants in Berlin, and advice for people who want to start their own blogs. Wednesday Chef has great pictures of its food, as well as interesting pictures of Berlin. The blog got its name because in the past, newspapers published their food articles on Wednesday.

There are a lot of cooking blogs on the Internet, and most of them are pretty good. Go online and check some of them out. You might be surprised at how much they can help you improve your cooking.

1. How did Wednesday Chef get its name?

- A. the writer only posts recipes on Wednesdays.
- B. the writer only cooks on Wednesday s.
- C. The writer was born on a Wednesday.
- D. Newspapers used to publish food articles on Wednesdays.

2. Which of the following is NOT a benefit of cooking blogs?

- A. There are many of them.
- B. Everyone who writes them is an expert.
- C. They are free.
- D. They give a lot of different ideas.

3. Who runs the blog Smitten Kitchen?

- A. A family in New York.
- B. A family in Berlin
- C. A family in Berlin
- D. A woman in Berlin

4. What does the passage say about Smitten Kitchen?

- A. It only gives recipes on Italian food.
- B. It focuses on simple recipes.
- C. It only offers a few recipes.
- D. Most of the food on that blog is hard to make.

5. Why should we be careful when we are looking at new blogs?

- A. We don't know who the writers are.

- B. Most new blogs are terrible.
- C. The recipes on new blogs are usually hard to make.
- D. They charge you some fees to get the recipes.

XI. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. Follow these safety instructions or you may get burnt.

If you _____

2. I suggest having spaghetti and pizza tonight.

Let's _____

3. My aunt has never tasted sushi before.

This is _____

4. You need to peel the onion and slice it.

The onion _____

5. Eating healthy foods is very important.

It is _____

XII. Make sentences using the words and phrases below to help you. You can add extra words or make changes.

1. Children/ adolescent/ should / eat / sufficient / nutritious / foods / grow/ develop normally.

2. Although/ eat/ breakfast/ dinner/ home/ students/ usually/ have/ lunch/ school.

3. Healthy lunches/ important/ for/ them/ because/ these/ help/ concentrate/ learning.

4. Some/ student/ usually/ have/ unhealthy lunch/ of/ fast food.

5. School aged/ children/ learn/ fast/ and/ be/ influenced/ friends.

6. If/ we/ not talk/ them/ about/ healthy eating/ they/ may/ only eat/ junk food.

7. At home/ parents/ should/ encourage/ children/ prepare/ lunchboxes.

8. They/ should discuss/ healthier/ food choices/ and/ decide/ what/ be/ lunchbox/ with/ children.

XIII. Use the information to write about Tom's eating habits for dinner. Give your opinion about his eating habits and possible changes.

Tom's dinner:

- Often: chicken / pizza
- Sometimes: pasta
- Never: carrots / peas; reason: hate them; prefer potatoes, cabbage
- Dessert: no fruit; usually hot chocolate, biscuits / piece of cake

Your opinion: diet not balanced, healthy

Your advice: eat more kinds of vegetables (carrots, peas, and broccoli); eat fruit

TEST - RECIPES AND EATING HABITS (UNIT 7)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined

- | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. gr <u>a</u> te | B. st <u>a</u> p <u>l</u> e | C. mar <u>i</u> n <u>a</u> te | D. sh <u>a</u> llot |
| 2. A. versat <u>i</u> le | B. sl <u>i</u> ce | C. spr <u>i</u> nk <u>l</u> e | D. comb <u>i</u> ne |
| 3. A. spr <u>i</u> nk <u>l</u> e | B. dr <u>a</u> in <u>u</u> | C. t <u>e</u> nd <u>e</u> r | D. gar <u>n</u> ish |
| 4. A. spr <u>e</u> ad | B. cr <u>e</u> am | C. br <u>e</u> ad | D. h <u>e</u> ad |
| 5. A. s <u>a</u> uce | B. s <u>t</u> ew | C. s <u>u</u> gar | D. s <u>t</u> eam |

II. Complete the sentences with a, an some, or any

1. We need _____ cheese to go with the pasta.
2. I'm reading _____ interesting book at the moment.
3. We haven't got _____ homework this weekend.
4. Are there _____ apples on the table?
5. I'd like _____ olive oil on my pizza.
6. There isn't _____ salt in this soup.
7. Mi got _____ tickets for the concert.
8. I need _____ clove of garlic for this recipe.
9. Have we got _____ rice and fresh fish for the sushi?
10. I'd like _____ egg for my omelette.

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences

1. Moderation doesn't mean _____ the foods you love.
A. to eliminate B. eliminating C. to prevent D. preventing
2. Studies suggest _____ only when you are most active and giving your digestive system a long break each day.
A. to eat B. being eaten C. eating D. being eating
3. Your body uses calcium to build healthy bones and teeth, _____ them strong as you age.
A. remain B. care C. continue D. keep
4. If you eat too quickly, you may not _____ attention to whether your hunger is satisfied.
A. pay B. take C. keep D. show
5. Common eating habits that can lead to _____ are: eating too fast, eating when not hungry, eating while standing up, and skipping meals.
A. gain weight B. weight gain C. put on weight D. be heavy
6. Keeping a _____ for a few days will help you discover your bad eating habits.
A. diary B. personal C. food diary D. report
7. You may have had certain eating habits for so long that you do not _____ they are unhealthy.
A. recognize B. realize C. understand D. tell

8. If children don't play sports, they _____ sleepy and tired.

- A. would feel B. will feel C. would have felt D. had felt

9. If parents don't cook at home, their children _____ more fast food.

- A. have B. would have C. may have D. had had

10. If you eat a lot of fruit, you _____ health problems.

- A. have B. may have C. had D. will never have

IV. Complete the following sentences with a suitable cooking verb. Do not use any word already given in the sentence

1. You _____ vegetables or fruits when you want to eat them. It means that you cut away their skin.

2. You _____ the mixture of water, flour, yolk and sugar when you want to make a cake. This mixture is called a dough.

3. You _____ meat only. It means you cut the meat in pieces or slices.

4. You _____ such substances like cheese, chocolate or carrot. You do it with a grater to cut the food into a lot of small pieces.

5. You _____ fruit and vegetables in order to prepare a juice.

6. You usually _____ vegetables like onion. It means that you cut them into many small pieces.

7. You _____ food in a frying pan in hot oil or fat.

8. You _____ food mainly in an oven. You always need to adjust the proper temperature.

9. You _____ meat, fish with several spices or seasoning to improve its flavor before cooking.

10. You _____ liquid substance. You use a utensil like a spoon in order to mix the substance.

V. Complete the conditional sentences type 1 with the suitable modal verbs and ordinary verbs.

1. If my parents work late, I _____ bread and cheese.

2. If we make noise in class, we _____ at the front.

3. If we feel sad, I _____ to my friends.

4. If I don't know the answer to a question, I _____ the answer when working in a group.

5. If I feel tired, I _____ a shower.

6. If it rains, I _____ to school by bus.

7. If our teacher gets angry with us, she _____ us extra homework.

8. If people don't have much time, they _____ fast food.

9. If you drink hot milk before bedtime, you _____ well.

10. If you get up late, you _____ time for breakfast.

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

A Healthy Life?

(1)_____ health experts believe that children and young people today are more (2)_____ than they used to be. So why has this happened?

One reason is bad eating habits. (3)_____ of young people don't have a healthy diet. They eat too much fast food (4)_____ hamburgers and pizza and not enough fruit and vegetables. In the US, many children (5)_____ fast food regularly since they were very young. In fact, almost one-third of American children aged four to nineteen have been eating fast food

(6)_____ all the time. They also don't (7)_____ exercise and spend too (8)_____ of their time watching TV, surfing the Internet or playing computer games.

So how can you change your habits if you have been following an unhealthy lifestyle for a long time? First, change your (9)_____ and eat more fruit and vegetables. Next, find an activity you enjoy. Why not try something different like rock climbing, surfing or hiking? Many young people have found that (10)_____ fit and healthy can be a lot of fun.

1. A. many B. much C. a lot D. plenty
2. A. healthy B. healthily C. unhealthy D. unhealthily
3. A. Many B. much C. lots D. very few
4. A. such B. includes C. like D. as
5. A. eat B. are eating C. have been eating D. ate
6. A. nearly B. most C. most of D. for
7. A. play B. make C. do D. bring
8. A. many B. much C. mostly D. most
9. A. menu B. ingredients C. recipes D. diet 10. A. become B. becoming C. became D. to be become

VII. Read the article, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Simple ways to lose weight on a budget

Plan to cook at home

Instead of buying costly prepared meals, which often tend to be high in calories, cook your own at home. Plan out your meals with high-fiber foods like beans and whole grains which will keep you full and are a cheaper, healthier alternative to rich proteins and more processed grains.

Eat less

Eating less leads to weight loss, and cost savings, especially if you cut down on the right things. Start by cutting your portions of pricy meat and poultry. Or swap out meat and poultry for cheaper vegetarian proteins like beans, lentils, tofu and eggs for some of your meals.

Double up on vegetables

Vegetables are great for weight loss, as well as all-around health. They are low in calories and high in water and fiber – two things that keep you feeling full. Save cash by shopping for those that are in season. Frozen vegetables can be a great bargain, with just as much nutrition as fresh, since they are picked and frozen at their peak ripeness.

Get creative with your exercise options

You don't need to **shell out** a monthly gym fee to get moving. Instead, find fun activities you enjoy for free. If you're just getting started with a regular exercise routine, try your beginning with daily walks: start slowly and build up time and speed.

Make friends with someone

One of the most powerful resources you have for helping your lose weight is your social network. Find a friend who is also trying to lose weight and agree to help each other stay motivated. One study found that when friends participated in a group weight-loss programme together, they lost more weight than people who did the same programme on their own.

1. The advantage of cooking at home is _____.
 - A. to have food that is in high calories
 - B. to enjoy a variety of rich proteins and more processed grains
 - C. to plan out your costly prepared meals
 - D. to choose foods that keep you full and is cheaper.
2. In order to cut down on your daily calories, you should do all the following things EXCEPT _____.
 - A. follow vegetarian diets for your meals
 - B. eat less meat and poultry
 - C. eat more beans, lentils, tofu and eggs
 - D. cut down on animal proteins for some of your meals
3. All of the following are true about vegetables EXCEPT that _____.
 - A. vegetables can keep you feeling full
 - B. they help you lose weight effectively
 - C. frozen vegetables are not good for your health
 - D. you feel healthier and save money with fresh vegetables in season
4. We can infer from article that _____.
 - A. you should join in a social network instead of going to gym
 - B. a partner can make you feel more motivated in losing weight
 - C. you should find fun activities at the gym and follow them
 - D. joining a programme you can lose more weight than your partner
5. The phrase “**shell out**” is closest in meaning to _____.
 - A. become more interested in something
 - B. pay money for something
 - C. peel something out
 - D. take someone out of a shell

VIII. Complete the conversation about Vietnamese eating habits, using the responses (A – G) given. There are two extra ones.

- A. In Vietnam, I eat a bowl of soup for breakfast every morning.
- B. I know I feel a lot better while in Vietnam, and it is because of the better diet.
- C. I had a sandwich for lunch with a large dose of meat, a few vegetables, and of course a Coke.

- D. Last week, it was serve as one of the main dishes at the canteen.
- E. I may also eat a lot of bread, bacon, and a Coke.
- F. We always have different fruits at lunch time and after dinner.
- G. For dinner, we have a large meat portion, including hamburgers and steaks.

Phong: What did you often have for breakfast in your country?

Nick: I often had a bowl of cereal for breakfast. (1)_____

Phong: Your breakfast was of high calories. And how about your breakfast in Vietnam?

Nick: (2)_____. Maybe it is beef soup, beef noodles or pho.

Phong: It is better for your health, Nick. How about lunch in your country?

Nick: (3)_____

Phong: In Vietnam, lunch usually consists of a meat dish and a main vegetable dish, along with rice, and vegetable soup at the end.

Nick: We often have that menu at our school canteen. (4)_____. Potatoes in various forms are often added to the dinner, and occasionally a vegetable.

Phong: Dinner here is lighter but it offers a variety of vegetables. I think it's better for our health. Anyway, have you ever tried fried silkworms?

Nick: (5)_____. I think it is very tasty and delicious.

IX. Write complete sentences about eating habits in Vietnam, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. Vietnamese people/ consider/ combination/ yin/ yang/ cooking/ healthy.

2. The salty food/ belong/ yang/ and/ sour and sweet one/ belong/ yin.

3. In each meal/ everyone/ own bowl/ and/ dishes/ put/ middle.

4. Therefore/ each one/ eat/ whatever they want/ and/ they/ not need/ eat what/ they dislike.

5. The food/ meat/ sliced/ small pieces/ so that/ everyone/ take them easily.

6. We/ eat/ only/ much food/ as body need.

7. Moderation/ key/ any healthy diet/ and/ it/ also/ mean/ balance/ our diet.

8. Cutting down/ your intake/ sugar/ or/ salt/ help/ you/ prevent/ several problems/ diseases.

9. You/ eat/ only when/ you/ active/ during daytime/ and/ avoid/ eat/ night.

10. If/ you/ work/ feel hungry/ you/ healthier snacks/ such/ fruits or vegetables.

KEY - RECIPES AND EATING HABITS (UNIT 7)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>Chop (v)</i>	/tʃɒp/	Chặt	<i>Spread (v)</i>	/spred/	Phết
<i>Cube (n)</i>	/kjuːb/	Miếng hình lập phương	<i>Sprinkle (v)</i>	/'sprɪŋkl/	Rắc
<i>Deep-fry (v)</i>	/,diːp 'fraɪ/	Rán ngập mỡ	<i>Slice (v)</i>	/slaɪs/	Cắt lát
<i>Dip (v)</i>	/dɪp/	Nhúng	<i>Staple (n)</i>	/'steɪpl/	Lương thực chính
<i>Drain (v)</i>	/dreɪn/	Làm ráo nước	<i>Starter (n)</i>	/'sta:tə(r)/	Món khai vị
<i>Garnish (v)</i>	/'ga:nɪʃ/	Trang trí (món ăn)	<i>Steam (v)</i>	/sti:m/	Hấp
<i>Grate (v)</i>	/greɪt/	Nạo	<i>Stew (v)</i>	/stjuː/	Hầm
<i>Grill (v)</i>	/grɪl/	Nướng	<i>Stir-fry (v)</i>	/'stɜː fraɪ/	Xào
<i>Marinate (v)</i>	/'mæɪneɪt/	Ướp	<i>Tender (adj)</i>	/'tendə(r)/	Mềm
<i>Peel (v)</i>	/pi:l/	Gọt vỏ, bóc vỏ	<i>Versatile (adj)</i>	/'vɜːsətaɪl/	Đa dụng
<i>Purée (v)</i>	/'pjʊəreɪ/	Xay nhuyễn	<i>Whisk (v)</i>	/wɪsk/	Đánh (trứng ...)
<i>Roast (v)</i>	/rəʊst/	quay			
<i>Shallot (n)</i>	/ʃə'lɒt/	Hành khô			
<i>Simmer (v)</i>	/'sɪmə(r)/	om			

II. Grammar:

1. Quantifiers: review: a / an / some / any

QUANTIFIERS(TỪ CHỈ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG)

”A” và “an” được dùng cho danh từ số ít đếm được .

-“A” đứng trước phụ âm : a cat, a dog, a table

-“an” đứng trước nguyên âm (nguyên âm là những chữ cái bằng đầu từ u, e, o,a,i (đọc là uê oai):
An ocean, An orange bike, An hour (“h” ở đây là âm câm nên hour được bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm.), an university student (“University”, trong đó U ở đây là phụ âm được phát âm)

1. Some

– Dùng trong câu khẳng định

- Some + countable noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều)
Some pens are on the table.

There are some pens on the table.

- Some + uncountable noun + V(số ít) There is
some ink in the inkpot.

2. Many/ much

– Dùng trong câu phủ định và câu nghi vấn. “Much” thường không được dùng trong câu khẳng định. “Many” có thể dùng được trong câu khẳng định nhưng “a lot of” thường được dùng nhiều hơn trong câu đàm thoại.

- Many + countable noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều) There are many books
on the table.

There are not many boys here.

Are there many teachers in your school?

- Much + uncountable noun + V(số ít)

There isn't much fresh water on earth.

There is much milk in the bottle.

We didn't spend much money.

Nhưng chú ý rằng , chúng ta dùng “too much” và “so many” trong các câu khẳng định:

We spent too much money.

3. A lot of/ lots of/ plenty of

– Dùng trong câu khẳng định

□ A lot of/ lots of/ plenty of + countable noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều)

A lot of pupils/ lots of pupils are in the library now.

Plenty of shops take checks.

□ A lot of/ lots of/ plenty of + noun (không đếm được) + V(số ít) Lots of sugar is sold in the shop.

A lot of time is needed to learn a language.

Don't rush, there's plenty of time.

4. A great deal of (= much)/ a number of

□ A great deal of + uncountable noun + V (số ít)

A great deal of rice is produced in Vietnam

- A large number of + countable noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều)
- A great number of + countable noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều) A large number of cows are raised in Ba Vi.
- The number of + countable noun (số nhiều) + V (số ít) The number of days in a week is seven.

The number of residents who have been questioned on this matter is quite small.

5. A little và little

- A little (không nhiều nhưng đủ dùng) + uncountable noun + V(số ít)
- Little (gần như không có gì) + uncountable noun + V(số ít)

Ví dụ:

A: Can you give me some ink?

B: Yes, I can give you some. I've got a little ink in my pen

(No, I'm sorry. I've got only little)

We must be quick. There is little time. (= not much , not enough time)

He spoke little English, so it was difficult to communicate with him

He spoke a little English, so we was able to communicate with him.

6. A few và few

- A few (không nhiều nhưng đủ dùng) + countable noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều)
- Few (gần như không có) + countable noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều) Ví dụ:

The house isn't full. There are a few rooms empty .

Where can I sit now? - There are few seats left.

He isn't popular. He has few friends.

She's lucky. She has few problems. (= not many problem)

7. All

- All + countable noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều) All students are ready for the exam.

- All + uncountable noun + V(số ít) Nearly all

water on earth is salty.

8. Most of, all of, some of, many of

- Most/ some/ all/ many + noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều) Some people are very unfriendly.
- Most of, some of, all of, many of + the/ his/ your/ my/ this/ those... + noun (số nhiều) + V(số nhiều)

Some of the people at the party were very friendly.

Most of my friends live in Hanoi.

2. Modal verbs in conditional sentences type 1: can / must / may / might / should

Modal verbs in conditional sentences type 1

Động từ khiếm khuyết trong câu điều kiện loại 1

Loại câu điều kiện này diễn tả điều kiện có thể hoặc không thể thực hiện ở trong tương lai.

Cấu trúc của câu điều kiện loại 1:

If - clause (Mệnh đề if) Main clause (Mệnh đề chính)

If + S + V (simple present) S + will/ can/ may/ must + V-bare infinitive

Thì hiện tại được dùng trong mệnh đề if. Thì tương lai được dùng trong mệnh đề chính.

Ex: If I have the money, I will buy a big house.

I will be late for work if you don't drive faster.

If you want to pass the exam, you must study harder.

LƯU Ý:

Thì hiện tại đơn có thể được dùng ở mệnh đề chính để diễn tả một điều kiện luôn luôn đúng.

- Trong câu điều kiện loại 1, chúng ta sử dụng thì hiện tại đơn trong mệnh đề if và will + nguyên mẫu không "to" trong mệnh đề chính. Đây là hình thức chuẩn.

- Thay vì will, chúng ta có thể sử dụng động từ khuyết thiếu khác như can, must, may, might hoặc should trong mệnh đề chính để diễn tả năng lực, sự cho phép, lời khuyên, khả năng, sự cần thiết...

Ex: If you cut your finger, it will bleed, (standard form)

Nếu bạn cắt ngón tay bạn, nó sẽ chảy máu. (hình thức chuẩn)

- If you finish your dinner, you **can** watch TV. (permission)

Nếu bạn kết thúc bữa tối, bạn có thể xem ti vi. (sự cho phép)

- She **can** learn to become a good cook if she tries hard, (ability)

Cô ấy có thể học để trở thành một đầu bếp giỏi nếu cô ấy cố gắng chăm chỉ. (năng lực)

- If he likes eating spicy food, he **may/might** add chilli, (possibility)

Nếu anh ấy thích ăn đồ cay, anh ấy có thể thêm ớt. (khả năng)

- If you don't want to get burnt, you **must** follow these safety instructions, (necessity)

Nếu bạn không muốn bị cháy, bạn phải làm theo những chỉ dẫn an toàn này. (sự cần thiết)

- If you feel unwell, you **shouldn't** eat fast food. (advice)

Nếu bạn cảm thấy không khỏe, bạn không nên ăn thức ăn nhanh, (lời khuyên)

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern

- A. versatile **B. tomato** C. marinate D. chocolate
- A. include B. combine **C. balance** D. reduce
- A. cucumber** B. ingredient C. opinion D. nutritious
- A. teaspoon B. cabbage C. pancake **D. canteen**
- A. individual **B. supermarket** C. avocado D. information

II. Match each cooking verb in column A with its definition in column B. Write the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
H	1. bake	A. cook something slowly in hot liquid kept at or just below the boiling point (85oC/95oC)
E	2. roast	B. cook food in hot oil, or fat
I	3. boil	C. cook food over charcoal on a grill
B	4. fry	D. cook or brown food, like bread or cheese by exposing it to a grill or fire
J	5. steam	E. cook, especially meat, in an oven or over a fire
A	6. simmer	F. cook meat and vegetables slowly in liquid in a closed dish or pan
D	7. toast	G. fry very quickly over high heat
G	8. stir-fry	H. cook in an oven without any extra fat

C	9. barbecue	I. cook food in boiling water that is 100oC
F	10. stew	J. cook food by heating it in the steam made from boiling water

III. Fill each numbered blank with a, an, some or any

Mum: Andy, let's go to the market. Do you have the list?

Andy: I'm doing it now. We need (1) **some** apples, (2) **a** bottle of cooking oil and (3) **some** bread. Oh, and there isn't (4) **any** salt either.

Mum: Is there (5) **any** milk?

Andy: Yes, there's (6) **some** in the fridge. But we haven't got (7) **any** orange juice.

Mum: Have we got (8) **any** vegetables?

Andy: Well, there is (9) **a** cauliflower, (10) **an** onion and (11) **some** potatoes, but there aren't (12) **any** artichokes.

Mum: Ok. Let's go shopping then. But before leaving, you should eat something. Is there (13) **any** fruit?

Andy: Yes, Mum, there is (14) **a** banana and (15) **an** orange. But I prefer to have (16) **a** muffin or (17) **some** chocolate.

Mum: No way, Andy. You know what I think about fatty food. Have (18) **a** banana and (19) **some** milk.

Andy: Ok, but ... Can I have (20) **a** chocolate cake after dinner, please?

Mum: We'll see.

IV. Fill each blank in the following sentences with a food quantifier from the box.

A bar of	A bowl of	A bunch of	A can of	A carton of
A clove of	A loaf of	A slice of	A stick of	A tablespoon of

- Add _____ vinegar and 200ml of water into the bowl and mix well. **A tablespoon of**
- My brother usually has _____ cereal and some milk for breakfast. **A bowl of**
- She bought a grapefruit and _____ bananas at the village market. **A bunch of**
- Mummy, can you give me _____ celery, please? **A stick of**
- I have a recipe that calls for only _____ garlic. **A clove of**
- There is _____ bread, some eggs and some salad for dinner. **A loaf of**
- You look thirsty. Would you like _____ soda? **A can of**
- Do you want _____ chocolate or five chocolate sweets? **A bar of**
- Please go to the store and buy _____ milk and if they have sugar, get one kilo. **A carton of**
- He has eaten _____ pizza, two pieces of cake and three eggs. **A slice of**

V. Underline the correct verb in each sentence.

- (Stir/ Drain/ **Chop**) the carrot into small circles.
- (Mix/ Boil/ **Bake**) the lasagna for 30 minutes in the oven.

3. After ten minutes, (**drain**/ boil/ fry) the spaghetti until there is no water left. Then place the pasta into a large bowl.
4. (**Peel**/ Stir/ Fry) the onion and throw away the skin.
5. (Drain/ **Marinate**/ Chop) the steak with salt, pepper and lemon.
6. (Simmer/ **Fry**/ Bake) the onion until it is soft, but not brown.
7. Constantly (fry/ **stir**/ boil) the mixture using a wooden spoon.
8. When the mixture looks shiny, (fry/ **pour**/ chop) it into individual dishes.
9. When you have finished preparing the vegetables, (stir/ **mix**/ chop) them together with your hands.
10. (Fry/ Bake/ **Boil**) the spaghetti for ten minutes, or until soft.

VI. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. I didn't eat everything that they _____ me at the party.
A. cooked B. baked **C. served** D. shared
2. Perhaps the three most popular ice cream _____ are vanilla, chocolate and strawberry.
A. brands B. ingredients C. offers **D. flavours**
3. Beet greens are the most _____ part of the vegetable and can be cooked like any other dark leafy green.
A. colourful B. nutritious C. traditional D. careful
4. Pumpkin soup is a good source of _____, minerals and vitamins, especially vitamin A
A. sugars B. solids **C. fibres** D. fats
5. You _____ chicken. You cook it in an oven or over a fire without liquid.
A. steam B. boil C. fry **D. roast**
6. You usually _____ vegetables like onion. It means that you cut them into many small pieces.
A. chop B. whisk C. grate D. sprinkle
7. Is there _____ apple juice in the fridge, Quang?
A. An B. a **C. any** D. some
8. Can I have a pizza, a dozen eggs and a _____ of lemonade, please?
A. bottle B. jar C. piece D. tub
9. I would like a _____ of broccoli and two carrots.
A. bunch B. clove C. slice **D. head**
10. You should eat more fruits and vegetables if you _____ to lose weight.
A. will want **B. want** C. would want D. wanted

VII. Fill in each gap in passage with ONE suitable word.

Vietnamese Cooking Habits

The Vietnamese prefer fresh foods, and will rarely (1) **choose** ready-made or frozen food. Since Vietnam is an agricultural country, there are many kinds of vegetables and fruits (2) **available**.

Vietnam also has a long coastal line, which means that there are many kinds of (3) **seafood** available.

Vietnamese households also prefer cooking and eating at (4) **home**. As Vietnam is originally an agricultural country, its culture is a community (5) **one**. Therefore, a family may have several (6) **generations**, and meals are family affairs. (7) **Although** they may eat out with their friends after work to (8) **maintain** those relationships, they still join their families' meals later in the evening.

VIII. Read the passage and match the ideas to the paragraphs. Write the answer in each blank.

- A. Coffee and tea are bad for you.
- B. There are "good" foods and "bad" foods.
- C. Vegetarian food is always healthy.
- D. Fruit juice is good for you.
- E. Carrots helps you see in the dark.
- F. It's OK not to eat breakfast.

Food: Facts and Myths

1. **D**

True and false. Natural fruit juice is good for you, but it can be bad for your teeth. So yeas, have some orange juice with your breakfast or lunch, but don't drink any juice between meals. Try water instead. Up to eight glasses of water a day is good for you, and water hasn't got any calories.

2. **F**

False. When you sleep, you don't eat for a long time and in the morning it's important to start the day with a good breakfast. Without breakfast, you often feel hungry later in the morning and start eating biscuits or chocolate. These sugary snacks are not a good idea. (If you want a healthy snack, try some nuts or melon.)

3. **A**

True and false. People drink coffee when they are tired, but it isn't very healthy so don't have more than two cups a day and don't drink any coffee before you go to bed. Tea is generally good for you, but drink it with lemon and put any milk or sugar in it! Green tea is especially healthy.

4. **C**

False. Vegetarian dishes often contain a lot of cheese and oil and these can be very fattening. It's important to eat some vegetables every day. (Doctors say five portions of vegetables and/or fruit). We need the vitamins and minerals, especially from green vegetables.

5. **E**

False. Carrots have a lot of vitamins A and vitamin A is good for your eyes, but nobody can really see in the dark!

6. **B**

False. There are good and bad diets. For example, real chocolate contains vitamins and minerals

and can help you when you are tired. But it also has a lot of sugar, so don't eat it often. Eat a balanced diet with some rice, pasta, bread or noodles and lots of vegetables and fruit. You also need protein, from meat, grilled fish, cheese or nuts. And you need oil: olive oil and fish oil are particularly good.

IX. Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

From bush food to barbecues

Australia is a huge country and it has a lot of different kinds of food. In the past, the Aboriginal people of Australia ate animals like crocodiles and some insects like the witchetty grub. Aboriginal Australians travelled around the Australian countryside, or 'bush', to find food.

When the first British and Irish people moved to Australia in the 1830s, they brought sheep and cows from Europe. They also brought traditional English and Irish recipes. Many of these recipes, like fish and chips and meat pies, are still popular today. They also created new Australian recipes such as the *pavlova* (a fruit dessert – named after a Russian dancer) and *dampier* (a bread cooked in the bush).

After 1945, a lot of people came to live in Australia from countries like Italy, Germany, Greece, Thailand and India. They brought recipes with them and Australians began to eat and drink different things. People started to drink espresso coffee and eat Mediterranean and Asian food.

A lot of modern Australians love cooking with fresh food. They often cook food on barbecues in their gardens or on the beach. Today more people also eat Aboriginal food like kangaroo and emu. Mark Olive, an Aboriginal chef, has a popular TV cookery programme about traditional bush food. There are always new recipes to try in Australia!

Task 1. Read the passage again, and decide whether the following statements are true (T), false (F), or not given (NG)

		T	F	NG
1.	Australia doesn't have many different types of food.		x	
2.	In the past, Aboriginal people found food in different places.	x		
3.	British and Irish people brought food and recipes to Australia.	x		
4.	The people who arrived after 1945 didn't like Australian food.			x
5.	Australians like food from countries like Italy, Greece, and Thailand.			x
6.	Cooking outside is popular in Australia.	x		
7.	Today many people in Australia eat crocodile.			x

Task 2. Find words in the passage that mean ...

- very big (paragraph 1): **huge**
- a name for the first people in Australia (paragraph 1): **the Aboriginal**
- somewhere to cook food outside (paragraph 4): **gardens/beach**

X. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each question Free and Easy

In the past, getting recipes and cooking tips was a complicated process. A person had to go to store and buy a cook book, or get recipes from friends. Fortunately, the Internet has changed all that. Now, if you want to find a recipe for lasagna or Cobb salad, you just search online. It couldn't be simpler.

Cooking blogs are a great source of information because they are free and there are so many of them. They are also nice because they give all different kinds of ideas. The problems with blogs is that because we don't know who is writing them, we need to use with caution. When you are looking at a new blog, you don't know if the writer knows what he or she is talking about.

We'd like to introduce two popular cooking blogs. The first is called Smitten Kitchen. This website is run by a family living in New York City. It focuses on food that doesn't require many ingredients. If you want to make food that is simple but wonderful, then this is the site for you. It offers hundreds and hundreds of recipes, divided into categories. You will be amazed at how many there are.

Wednesday Chef is another great cooking blog. It is run by a writer who lives in Berlin. This blog also offers many recipes, along with recommendations for great restaurants in Berlin, and advice for people who want to start their own blogs. Wednesday Chef has great pictures of its food, as well as interesting pictures of Berlin. The blog got its name because in the past, newspapers published their food articles on Wednesday.

There are a lot of cooking blogs on the Internet, and most of them are pretty good. Go online and check some of them out. You might be surprised at how much they can help you improve your cooking.

1. How did Wednesday Chef get its name?

- A. the writer only posts recipes on Wednesdays.
- B. the writer only cooks on Wednesday s.
- C. The writer was born on a Wednesday.
- D. **Newspapers used to publish food articles on Wednesdays.**

2. Which of the following is NOT a benefit of cooking blogs?

- A. There are many of them.
- B. **Everyone who writes them is an expert.**
- C. They are free.
- D. They give a lot of different ideas.

3. Who runs the blog Smitten Kitchen?

- A. **A family in New York.**
- B. A woman in New York.
- C. A family in Berlin
- D. A woman in Berlin

4. What does the passage say about Smitten Kitchen?

- A. It only gives recipes on Italian food.

B. It focuses on simple recipes.

C. It only offers a few recipes.

D. Most of the food on that blog is hard to make.

5. Why should we be careful when we are looking at new blogs?

A. We don't know who the writers are.

B. Most new blogs are terrible.

C. The recipes on new blogs are usually hard to make.

D. They charge you some fees to get the recipes.

XI. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. Follow these safety instructions or you may get burnt.

If you don't follow these safety instructions, you may get burnt.

2. I suggest having spaghetti and pizza tonight.

Let's have spaghetti and pizza tonight

3. My aunt has never tasted sushi before.

This is the first time (that) my aunt has ever tasted sushi.

4. You need to peel the onion and slice it.

The onion needs to be peeled and sliced.

5. Eating healthy foods is very important.

It is very important to eat healthy foods.

XII. Make sentences using the words and phrases below to help you. You can add extra words or make changes.

1. Children/ adolescent/ should / eat / sufficient / nutritious / foods / grow/ develop normally.

Children and adolescents should eat sufficient nutritious foods to grow and develop normally.

2. Although/ eat/ breakfast/ dinner/ home/ students/ usually/ have/ lunch/ school.

Although they eat breakfast and dinner at home, students usually have lunch at school.

3. Healthy lunches/ important/ for/ them/ because/ these/ help/ concentrate/ learning.

Healthy lunches are important for them because these help them concentrate on learning.

4. Some/ student/ usually/ have/ unhealthy lunch/ of/ fast food.

Some students usually have an unhealthy lunch of fast food.

5. School aged/ children/ learn/ fast/ and/ be/ influenced/ friends.

School aged children learn fast and are influenced by friends.

6. If/ we/ not talk/ them/ about/ healthy eating/ they/ may/ only eat/ junk food.

If we don't talk to them about healthy eating, they may only eat junk food

7. At home/ parents/ should/ encourage/ children/ prepare/ lunchboxes.

At home parents should encourage their children to prepare their lunchboxes

8. They/ should discuss/ healthier/ food choices/ and/ decide/ what/ be/ lunchbox/ with/ children.

They should discuss healthier food choices and decide what will be in the lunchbox with their

My friend, Tom often has chicken or pizza for dinner. Sometimes he eats pasta but he never eats carrots or peas because he hates them. He prefers potatoes and cabbage. For dessert, he never eats fruit. He usually has a cup of hot chocolate, some biscuits or a piece of cake.

I think Tom's diet is not balanced and healthy, and he should change his eating habits. First, he should eat a variety of vegetables. Besides potatoes and cabbage, he can eat carrots, broccoli or peas. Second, he should not have too much chocolate or too many biscuits for dessert. Instead, he should eat fruit. I am sure these changes will keep him fit.

children.

XIII. Use the information to write about Tom's eating habits for dinner. Give your opinion about his eating habits and possible changes.

Tom's dinner:

- Often: chicken / pizza
- Sometimes: pasta
- Never: carrots / peas; reason: hate them; prefer potatoes, cabbage
- Dessert: no fruit; usually hot chocolate, biscuits / piece of cake

Your opinion: diet not balanced, unhealthy

Your advice: eat more kinds of vegetables (carrots, peas, and broccoli); eat fruit

TEST - RECIPES AND EATING HABITS (UNIT 7)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. gr <u>a</u> te | B. st <u>a</u> p <u>l</u> e | C. mar <u>i</u> nate | D. sh<u>a</u>llot |
| 2. A. versat <u>i</u> le | B. sl <u>i</u> ce | C. spr<u>i</u>ngle | D. combin <u>e</u> |
| 3. A. spr<u>i</u>ngle | B. drain <u>u</u> | C. tend <u>e</u> r | D. garn <u>i</u> sh |
| 4. A. spr <u>e</u> ad | B. cr<u>e</u>am | C. br <u>e</u> ad | D. h <u>e</u> ad |
| 5. A. s <u>a</u> uce | B. st <u>e</u> w | C. s<u>u</u>gar | D. st <u>e</u> am |

II. Complete the sentences with a, an some, or any

1. We need **some** cheese to go with the pasta.

2. I'm reading **an** interesting book at the moment.
3. We haven't got **any** homework this weekend.
4. Are there **any** apples on the table?
5. I'd like **some** olive oil on my pizza.
6. There isn't **any** salt in this soup.
7. Mi got **some** tickets for the concert.
8. I need **a** clove of garlic for this recipe.
9. Have we got **any** rice and fresh fish for the sushi?
10. I'd like **an** egg for my omelet.

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences

1. Moderation doesn't mean _____ the foods you love.
A. to eliminate **B. eliminating** C. to prevent D. preventing
2. Studies suggest _____ only when you are most active and giving your digestive system a long break each day.
A. to eat B. being eaten **C. eating** D. being eating
3. Your body uses calcium to build healthy bones and teeth, _____ them strong as you age.
A. remain B. care C. continue **D. keep**
4. If you eat too quickly, you may not _____ attention to whether your hunger is satisfied.
A. pay B. take C. keep D. show
5. Common eating habits that can lead to _____ are: eating too fast, eating when not hungry, eating while standing up, and skipping meals.
A. gain weight **B. weight gain** C. put on weight D. be heavy
6. Keeping a _____ for a few days will help you discover your bad eating habits.
A. diary B. personal **C. food diary** D. report
7. You may have had certain eating habits for so long that you do not _____ they are unhealthy.
A. recognize **B. realize** C. understand D. tell
8. If children don't play sports, they _____ sleepy and tired.
A. would feel **B. will feel** C. would have felt D. had felt
9. If parents don't cook at home, their children _____ more fast food.
A. have B. would have **C. may have** D. had had
10. If you eat a lot of fruit, you _____ health problems.
A. have B. may have C. had **D. will never have**

IV. Complete the following sentences with a suitable cooking verb. Do not use any word already given in the sentence

1. You **peel** vegetables or fruits when you want to eat them. It means that you cut away their skin.

2. You **whisk** the mixture of water, flour, yolk and sugar when you want to make a cake. This mixture is called a dough.
3. You **slice** meat only. It means you cut the meat in pieces or slices.
4. You **grate** such substances like cheese, chocolate or carrot. You do it with a grater to cut the food into a lot of small pieces.
5. You **squeeze** fruit and vegetables in order to prepare a juice.
6. You usually **slice** vegetables like onion. It means that you cut them into many small pieces.
7. You **stir-fry** food in a frying pan in hot oil or fat.
8. You **bake** food mainly in an oven. You always need to adjust the proper temperature.
9. You **marinate** meat, fish with several spices or seasoning to improve its flavor before cooking.
10. You **whisk** liquid substance. You use a utensil like a spoon in order to mix the substance.

V. Complete the conditional sentences type 1 with the suitable modal verbs and ordinary verbs.

1. If my parents work late, I **will eat** bread and cheese.
2. If we make noise in class, we **will have to sit** at the front.
3. If we feel sad, I **can talk** to my friends.
4. If I don't know the answer to a question, I **will find out/ look for** the answer when working in a group.
5. If I feel tired, I **may have/ take** a shower.
6. If it rains, I **will go** to school by bus.
7. If our teacher gets angry with us, she **may/ might give** us extra homework.
8. If people don't have much time, they **will eat/ have** fast food.
9. If you drink hot milk before bedtime, you **may sleep** well.
10. If you get up late, you **won't have** time for breakfast.

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

A Healthy Life?

(1)_____ health experts believe that children and young people today are more (2)_____ than they used to be. So why has this happened?

One reason is bad eating habits. (3)_____ of young people don't have a healthy diet. They eat too much fast food (4)_____ hamburgers and pizza and not enough fruit and vegetables. In the US, many children (5)_____ fast food regularly since they were very young. In fact, almost one-third of American children aged four to nineteen have been eating fast food

(6)_____ all the time. They also don't (7)_____ exercise and spend too (8)_____ of their time watching TV, surfing the Internet or playing computer games.

So how can you change your habits if you have been following an unhealthy lifestyle for a long time? First, change your (9)_____ and eat more fruit and vegetables. Next, find an activity you enjoy. Why not try something different like rock climbing, surfing or hiking? Many young people have found that (10)_____ fit and healthy can be a lot of fun.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------|----------|-----------|
| 1. A. many | B. much | C. a lot | D. plenty |
|-------------------|---------|----------|-----------|

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| 2. A. healthy | B. healthily | C. unhealthy | D. unhealthily |
| 3. A. Many | B. much | C. lots | D. very few |
| 4. A. such | B. includes | C. like | D. as |
| 5. A. eat | B. are eating | C. have been eating | D. ate |
| 6. A. nearly | B. most | C. most of | D. for |
| 7. A. play | B. make | C. do | D. bring |
| 8. A. many | B. much | C. mostly | D. most |
| 9. A, menu | B. ingredients | C. recipes | D. diet |
10. A. become **B. becoming** C. became D. to be become

VII. Read the article, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Simple ways to lose weight on a budget

Plan to cook at home

Instead of buying costly prepared meals, which often tend to be high in calories, cook your own at home. Plan out your meals with high-fiber foods like beans and whole grains which will keep you full and are a cheaper, healthier alternative to rich proteins and more processed grains.

Eat less

Eating less leads to weight loss, and cost savings, especially if you cut down on the right things. Start by cutting your portions of pricy meat and poultry. Or swap out meat and poultry for cheaper vegetarian proteins like beans, lentils, tofu and eggs for some of your meals.

Double up on vegetables

Vegetables are great for weight loss, as well as all-around health. They are low in calories and high in water and fiber – two things that keep you feeling full. Save cash by shopping for those that are in season. Frozen vegetables can be a great bargain, with just as much nutrition as fresh, since they are picked and frozen at their peak ripeness.

Get creative with your exercise options

You don't need to **shell out** a monthly gym fee to get moving. Instead, find fun activities you enjoy for free. If you're just getting started with a regular exercise routine, try your beginning with daily walks: start slowly and build up time and speed.

Make friends with someone

One of the most powerful resources you have for helping your lose weight is your social network. Find a friend who is also trying to lose weight and agree to help each other stay motivated. One study found that when friends participated in a group weight-loss programme together, they lost more weight than people who did the same programme on their own.

- The advantage of cooking at home is _____.
 - to have food that is in high calories
 - to enjoy a variety of rich proteins and more processed grains
 - to plan out your costly prepared meals
 - to choose foods that keep you full and is cheaper.**
- In order to cut down on your daily calories, you should do all the following things EXCEPT _____.
 - to have food that is in high calories
 - to enjoy a variety of rich proteins and more processed grains
 - to plan out your costly prepared meals
 - to choose foods that keep you full and is cheaper.**

- A. **follow vegetarian diets for your meals**
 - B. eat less meat and poultry
 - C. eat more beans, lentils, tofu and eggs
 - D. cut down on animal proteins for some of your meals
3. All of the following are true about vegetables EXCEPT that _____.
- A. vegetables can keep you feeling full
 - B. they help you lose weight effectively
 - C. **frozen vegetables are not good for your health**
 - D. you feel healthier and save money with fresh vegetables in season
4. We can infer from article that _____.
- A. you should join in a social network instead of going to gym
 - B. **a partner can make you feel more motivated in losing weight**
 - C. you should find fun activities at the gym and follow them
 - D. joining a programme you can lose more weight than your partner
5. The phrase “**shell out**” is closest in meaning to _____.
- A. become more interested in something
 - B. **pay money for something**
 - C. peel something out
 - D. take someone out of a shell

VIII. Complete the conversation about Vietnamese eating habits, using the responses (A – G) given. There are two extra ones.

- A. In Vietnam, I eat a bowl of soup for breakfast every morning.
- B. I know I feel a lot better while in Vietnam, and it is because of the better diet.
- C. I had a sandwich for lunch with a large dose of meat, a few vegetables, and of course a Coke.
- D. Last week, it was serve as one of the main dishes at the canteen.
- E. I may also eat a lot of bread, bacon, and a Coke.
- F. We always have different fruits at lunch time and after dinner.
- G. For dinner, we have a large meat portion, including hamburgers and steaks.

Phong: What did you often have for breakfast in your country?

Nick: I often had a bowl of cereal for breakfast. (1) **E**

Phong: Your breakfast was of high calories. And how about your breakfast in Vietnam?

Nick: (2) **A**. Maybe it is beef soup, beef noodles or pho.

Phong: It is better for your health, Nick. How about lunch in your country?

Nick: (3) **C**

Phong: In Vietnam, lunch usually consists of a meat dish and a main vegetable dish, along with rice, and vegetable soup at the end.

Nick: We often have that menu at our school canteen. (4) **G**. Potatoes in various forms are often added to the dinner, and occasionally a vegetable.

Phong: Dinner here is lighter but it offers a variety of vegetables. I think it's better for our health. Anyway, have you ever tried fried silkworms?

Nick: (5) **D.** I think it is very tasty and delicious.

IX. Write complete sentences about eating habits in Vietnam, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. Vietnamese people/ consider/ combination/ yin/ yang/ cooking/ healthy.

Vietnamese people consider the combination of yin and yang in cooking is healthy

2. The salty food/ belong/ yang/ and/ sour and sweet one/ belong/ yin.

The salty food belongs to yang, and the sour and sweet one belongs to yin.

3. In each meal/ everyone/ own bowl/ and/ dishes/ put/ middle.

In each meal, everyone has their own bowl, and dishes are put in the middle

4. Therefore/ each one/ eat/ whatever they want/ and/ they/ not need/ eat what/ they dislike.

Therefore, each one can eat whatever they want, and they do not need to eat what they dislike

5. The food/ meat/ sliced/ small pieces/ so that/ everyone/ take them easily.

The food like meat are sliced into small pieces so that everyone can take them easily.

6. We/ eat/ only/ much food/ as body need.

We should eat only as much food as our body needs

7. Moderation/ key/ any healthy diet/ and/ it/ also/ mean/ balance/ our diet.

Moderation is the key to any healthy diet, and it also means the balance in our diet

8. Cutting down/ your intake/ sugar/ or/ salt/ help/ you/ prevent/ several problems/ diseases.

Cutting down on your intake of sugar or salt helps you prevent several problems and diseases

9. You/ eat/ only when/ you/ active/ during daytime/ and/ avoid/ eat/ night.

You should eat only when you are active during daytime and avoid eating at night

10. If/ you/ work/ feel hungry/ you/ healthier snacks/ such/ fruits or vegetables.

If you work and feel hungry, you can have healthier snacks, such as fruits or vegetables

TOURISM (UNIT 8)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>affordable (adj)</i>	/ə'fɔ:də ɔl/	có thể chi trả được, hợp túi tiền	<i>brehtaking (adj)</i>	/'breθteɪkɪŋ/	ấn tượng, hấp dẫn
<i>air (v)</i>	/eə(r)/	phát sóng (đài, vô tuyến)	<i>check-in (n)</i>	/tʃek-ɪn/	việc làm thủ tục lên máy bay
<i>checkout (n)</i>	/'tʃekəʊt/	thời điểm rời khỏi khách sạn	<i>confusion (n)</i>	/kən'fju:ʒn/	sự hoang mang, bối rối
<i>exotic (adj)</i>	/ɪg'zɒtɪ ʃ/	kì lạ	<i>erode away (v)</i>	/ɪ'rəʊd ə'we /	mòn đi
<i>explore (v)</i>	/ɪk'splɔ:(r)/	thăm hiểm	<i>hyphen (n)</i>	/'haɪfn/	dấu gạch ngang

<i>imperial (adj)</i>	/ɪmˈpiəriəl/	(thuộc về) hoàng đế	<i>inaccessible (adj)</i>	/ˌɪnækˈsesəbl/	không thể vào/tiếp cận được
<i>magnificence (n)</i>	/mægˈnɪfɪsns/	sự nguy nga, lộng lẫy, tráng lệ	<i>not break the bank (idiom)</i>	/nɒt breɪk ðə bæŋk/	không tốn nhiều tiền
<i>orchid (n)</i>	/ˈɔːkɪd/	hoa lan	<i>package tour (n)</i>	/ˈpækɪdʒ tuə(r)/	chuyến du lịch trọn gói
<i>pile-up (n)</i>	/paɪl-ʌp/	vụ tai nạn do nhiều xe đâm nhau	<i>promote (v)</i>	/prəˈməʊt/	giúp phát triển, quảng bá
<i>pyramid (n)</i>	/ˈpɪrəˌmɪd/	kim tự tháp	<i>safari (n)</i>	/səˈfɑːri/	cuộc đi săn, cuộc hành trình (bằng đường bộ nhất là ở đông và nam phi)
<i>stalagmite (n)</i>	/stəˈlæɡmaɪt/	măng đá	<i>stimulating (adj)</i>	/ˈstɪmjuleɪtɪ /	thú vị đầy phần khích
<i>touchdown (n)</i>	/ˈtʌtʃdaʊn/	sự hạ cánh	<i>varied (adj)</i>	/ˈveəriəd/	đa dạng
<i>lush (adj)</i>	/lʌʃ/	tươi tốt, xum xuê	<i>speciality (n)</i>	/ˌspeʃiˈæləti/	Đặc sản
<i>decide (v)</i> <i>decision (n)</i>	/dɪˈsaɪd/ /dɪˈsɪʒn/	Quyết định	<i>be into sth</i>		like it very much
<i>make a decision</i>		Đưa ra quyết định			
<i>tease (v)</i>	/tiːz/	Trêu chọc, đùa	<i>adventure (n)</i> <i>adventurous (a)</i>	/ədˈventʃə(r) /ədˈventʃərəs/	Phiêu lưu, mạo hiểm
<i>reserve(v)</i> <i>reservation (n)</i>	/rɪˈzɜːv/ /ˌrezəˈveɪʃn/	Đặt chỗ trước	<i>expedition (n)</i>	/ˌekspəˈdɪʃn/	Cuộc viễn chinh, thám hiểm
<i>excursion (n)</i>	/ɪkˈskɜːʃn/	Cuộc đi chơi, tham quan	<i>jet lag(n)</i>	/ˈdʒet læɡ/	Mệt mỏi sau chuyến bay dài
<i>standstill (n)</i>	/ˈstændstɪl/	Sự dừng lại, bế tắc	<i>terminal (n)</i>	/ˈtɜːmɪnəl/	Nhà đón khách
<i>drawback (n)</i>	/ˈdrɔːbæk/	Hạn chế	<i>tailor-made(a)</i>	/ˌteɪləˈmeɪd/	May đo
<i>wildlife (n)</i>	/ˈwaɪldlaɪf/	Thú vật, chim muông ... hoang dã	<i>bargain (n)</i>	/ˈbɑːɡən/	Món hời

II. Grammar: Compound nouns

Articles: *a/ an and the*

III. Pronunciation: Tone in asking for information

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. stimulate | B. organise | C. efficient | D. terminal |
| 2. A. challenge | B. promote | C. affect | D. machine |
| 3. A. discover | B. addition | C. fantastic | D. habitat |
| 4. A. wildlife | B. afford | C. mountain | D. passport |
| 5. A. magnificence | B. geography | C. expedition | D. accommodate |

II. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only.

Buffet	Caravan	Cruise	Destination	Harbour
Luggage	Resort	Ticket	Tour	Trip

1. The manager is away on business _____ so I am in charge of the office now.
2. If you want to see historical places it is a good idea to go on a guided _____.
3. They met on board of a luxurious yacht during a _____ in the Caribbean.
4. After changing trains three times we arrived at our _____ in the end.
5. If you have any excess _____ you must pay extra money.
6. We spent our last holidays at a camping site, living in a _____.
7. They spent two weeks at a fashionable ski _____ in Switzerland.
8. Nam checked to make sure he had his _____ and passport.
9. On most trains there is a _____ where you can eat a snack or something hot.
10. As soon as the ship left the _____ everybody got seasick.

III. Circle A, B, C, or D to indicate the best option for each blank in the sentences.

1. You can learn a lot about the local _____ by talking to local people.
A. Territory B. area C. land D. nation
2. It's good to have someone to _____ you when you are visiting a new place.
A. Lead B. take C. guide D. bring
3. When you _____ your destination, your tour guide will meet you at the airport.
A. Arrive B. reach C. get D. achieve
4. It can be quite busy here during the tourist _____.
A. Season B. phase C. period D. stage
5. Make sure you _____ a hotel before you come to our island, especially in the summer.
A. Book B. keep C. put D. buy
6. Captain Cook discovered Australia on a _____ to the Pacific.
A. Vacation B. travel C. cruise D. voyage
7. Most tourist attractions in London charge an admission _____.
A. Fare B. ticket C. fee D. pay
8. The hotel where we are _____ is quite luxurious.
A. Living B. existing C. remaining D. staying

IV. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I'm very happy that my parents let me make my own _____ DECIDE about holiday destinations
2. At this time it may not be easy to find accommodation with _____ REASON _____ prices.
3. _____, our flight was cancelled and we had to spend one LUCK night at the airport.
4. The Opera House is one of the most popular tourist _____ in _____ ATTRACT Sydney.
5. They live in a remote area which is _____ except by horse. ACCESS
6. They were the first _____ to cross the country from south to EXPLORE north.
7. What has been the most _____ experience in your life as a CHALLENGE tourist guide, Ms Lien?
8. More and more foreigners like travelling to Vietnam for holiday AFFORD because things are _____ here.
9. British cavers have made some important _____ about Son DISCOVER Duong Cave.
10. For the more _____ tourists, there are trips into the ADVENTURE mountains with a local guide.

V. Read the article about Hawaii, and complete the gaps with *a, an, the* or *zero* article (Ø).

Welcome To Hawaii

Hawaii (1)_____ popular holiday destination. But which island should you choose for your holiday in (2)_____ paradise?

All (3)_____ international flights go from the capital, Honolulu, on Oahu Island. Oahu is the most populated island and (4)_____ home of the famous Waikiki beach. International surfing competitions take place here. Oahu is also (5)_____ place for shops, restaurants and the best nightlife.

MAUI

Maui is the most romantic island and ideal for relaxing. There are (6)_____ white sandy beaches with turquoise water, and in summer the waves are small and perfect for inexperienced surfers. In winter, you can see whales in the warm water. Maui is ideal for nature lovers and visitors fall in love with (7)_____ island's natural beauty.

BIG ISLAND

Big island is cheaper and for the more adventurous visitors. You can go to (8)_____ top of the highest mountain 4000 metres above (9)_____ sea level and enjoy (10)_____ amazing view.

VI. Form compound nouns from a word in the upper row and another in the lower, and then fill them in the blanks. Make sure that you use them in the correct form.

<i>Note</i>	<i>Earth</i>	<i>Hair</i>	<i>Ice</i>	<i>Bed</i>	<i>Key</i>	<i>Ear</i>	<i>Air</i>	<i>Arm</i>	<i>Cow</i>
<i>Berg</i>	<i>Phones</i>	<i>Craft</i>	<i>Chair</i>	<i>Boy</i>	<i>Quake</i>	<i>Cut</i>	<i>Book</i>	<i>Room</i>	<i>Board</i>

1. This is my grandfather's favorite _____ made in the 19th century.
2. The _____ landed safely at the airport.
3. I use my _____ when I travel on business.
4. My _____ is very small but nice.
5. I asked my nephew to use his _____ because I did not like his music.
6. The _____ loved his horses.
7. The _____ measured 5.3 on the Richter scale.

8. A(n) _____ can sink a ship.
9. _____ is an input device.
10. I need a(n) _____ at every two weeks.

<i>Bus</i>	<i>Washing</i>	<i>Sun</i>	<i>Green</i>	<i>Black</i>	<i>Blue</i>	<i>Soft</i>	<i>Foot</i>	<i>Swimming</i>	<i>Fire</i>
<i>Board</i>	<i>Ware</i>	<i>Bird</i>	<i>Ball</i>	<i>Stop</i>	<i>Flies</i>	<i>Pool</i>	<i>House</i>	<i>Rise</i>	<i>Machine</i>

11. _____ is a type of bird.
12. _____ is a place where we grow plants.
13. We join a _____ in every summer holiday.
14. Lots of _____ come at night in the summer holiday.
15. We played _____ today for two hours.
16. Teachers make us understand by writing properly on _____.
17. Windows is an operating system _____ on every PC.
18. I know how to wash clothes in a _____.
19. I have to wait for bus number 12 at the _____.
20. I wake up daily before the _____.

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

The Maldives are a group of very small islands in the Indian Ocean, near Sri Lanka. It has the smallest (1) _____ of any Asian countries. There are about 1200 islands and there are people living on 200 of them. About 400,000 people live in the Maldives and 75,000 of them are (2) _____ the capital island, Malé. Malé is different from the other islands in the Maldives because it doesn't have any beaches. In fact, there is a small wall (3) _____ goes around the whole island.

It is very easy to get around the islands. When you (4) _____ on the airport island, you can take a *dhoni* and go to Malé. This is a small boat used for (5) _____ around the islands. *Dhoni* taxis go from the airport island to the capital island every fifteen minutes and (6) _____ midnight every half an hour. You can use these boats to visit other islands, too.

The Maldives are a popular place for scuba diving (7) _____ there are many wonderful fish in the water to see. Also, the water is very clear so when you are (8) _____ you can see for more than 50 metres! There are many professional diving schools with instructors.

They speak many languages, so you can (9) _____ someone to help you. Of course, that's not all you can do on these beautiful islands. You can go whale and dolphin (10) _____, fishing, surfing, snorkeling, hiking or explore the towns.

1. A. nation B. Population C. Area D. Inhabitant
2. A. in B. At C. Above D. On
3. A. who B. Where C. That D. It
4. A. arrive B. Travel C. Depart D. Leave
5. A. education B. Transportation C. Production D. Translation
6. A. at B. Before C. On D. After
7. A. although B. Because C. However D. Furthermore
8. A. underwater B. Underlevel C. Undersea D. Underneath
9. A. look B. see C. find D. hold
10. A. playing B. catching C. hearing D. watching

VIII. Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

Son Doong Cave in Vietnam – Good Morning America

Son Doong Cave and Swallow Cave (En Cave) were recorded and broadcast on Good Morning America – a programme of ABC Television (USA). By being broadcast on Good Morning America (ABC Television), Son Doong Cave would be introduced widely to international travellers.

This is a good chance for Quang Binh tourism to promote the image of Son Doong – the biggest cave in Vietnam – to travellers around the world. Therefore, the film crew worked in the most favourable conditions. The programme was directly broadcast on satellite in May 2015.

The cave is a part of the underground system connecting over 150 other caves in Vietnam near Vietnam – Lao border with many caves such as Phong Nha Cave.

Son Doong Cave is compared equally to Mount Everest in terms of attraction. The biggest natural cave in the world is appreciated to be an interesting destination for a several day tour, including exploring underground rivers, caves and camping ... The overwhelming natural landscapes inside Son Doong Cave create an attraction by majestic and magnificent scenes. It takes months to end up a cave's round. In addition, the condition to join tours in Son Doong Cave is extremely high. Adventures must be in good mental and physical health to conquer the cave. Son Doong, the biggest cave in Vietnam, along with other attractions in Quang Binh, is an attractive destination for travelers, especially those who are fans of natural exploration. The first exploration tour was held in early August 2013. The first tour consisted of 6 people from the US, Russia, Australia, and Norway. They underwent 7 days and 6 nights to explore Son Doong Cave. There are a large number of tourists registering for next tours since then.

Task 1. Identify whether the statements are true (T), or false (F).

1. Thanks to the programme of Good Morning America on ABC Television, a large number of people around the world will know Son Doong Cave.
2. The film crew making the programme about the cave met a lot of problems from the local authorities.
3. There are many caves in Quang Binh province but Son Doong Cave may be the most well known.
4. The number of people climbing Mount Everest is the same as that exploring Son Doong Cave.
5. The exploration tour of Son Doong Cave is so hard that it requires tourists to have good physical and mental health.
6. Tourists can explore the cave in several months.

Task 2. Read the passage again and answer the questions.

1. When was the programme about Son Doong Cave on Good Morning America broadcast?
.....
.....
2. What can be found in the underground system in Quang Binh province?
.....
.....
3. In which aspect is Son Doong Cave compared to Mount Everest?
.....
.....
4. What activities can tourists do in the cave?
.....
.....

5. When was the first exploration tour held?
.....
.....
6. How long did the first group of tourists spend in the cave?
.....
.....

IX. Use the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2 – 5 words in total).

1. Lan hasn't decided where to go on holiday. **Mind**
Lan hasn't _____ about where to go on holiday.
2. We don't like travelling during peak season. **Into**
We _____ during peak season.
3. Scuba-diving is not really my cup of tea. **Interested** I
_____ scuba-diving.
4. No mountains in Western Europe are higher than Mount Blanc. **The** Mount
Blanc _____ Western Europe.
5. They require special permits to access Son Doong Cave. **To** Special
permits _____ Son Doong Cave.

X. Rewrite each of the sentences so that it means the same as the one before it.

1. You spent more money during the trip than I did.
I _____ didn't
.....
2. Have you ever been to Kuala Lumpur before?
Is _____ this _____ your
.....?
3. China is a huge tourist attraction; it has many old castles and pagodas.
As _____ China
.....
4. I found this place rather boring.
I _____ wasn't
t
.....
5. We last went to Spain three years ago.
It _____ is
.....
6. We visited a magnificent old house on the plateau. The
.....

XI. Use the following ideas to write a paragraph of around 100 words about the negative effects of tourism.

Negative effect: quality of life of the local community is changed

- Changes in lifestyle change
- Changes in cultural and traditional practices
- Changes in physical structure

- If you pay a visit to Hue, you should once visit Lang Co beach where you can have the most relaxing time and admire the natural beauty of _____.
a. Views b. panoramas c. sights d. landscapes
- Travelling to Ba Mun Island in Quang Ninh, tourists can explore on their own, following some natural _____ on the island.
a. Trails b. marks c. roads d. stretches
- For people in Cam Thanh commune near Hoi An, the coconut wetlands provide fisheries, a beautiful area for _____ as well as an ideal refuge for boats during heavy storms.
a. Tourist b. tour c. tourism d. tour guide
- In Binh Ba Island (Lobster Island), there are many beautiful beaches with white sand, clear water, blue sky, which is _____ for those who love nature and calmness.
a. Available b. famous c. good d. suitable
- _____ domestic and foreign tourism will create demand for additional hotels and motels.
a. Increase b. increased c. increasing d. increasingly
- Con Dao has not only prisons but also _____ natural landscapes.
a. Surprising b. shocking c. stunning d. extreme
- Eight o'clock is _____ good time to phone Nick: he's always at home in _____ evening.
a. Ø - the b. a - a c. a - Ø d. a - an
- Does it take _____ long time to get to _____ city centre?
a. Ø - the b. a - a c. a - the d. the - the
- What do you think of _____ public transport in _____ Ha Noi?
a. Ø - Ø b. a - a c. a - Ø d. the - Ø
- Parking is very difficult in _____ city centre, so my father always go there by _____ bus.
a. The - Ø b. the - the c. a - a d. a - Ø

IV. Form the compound nouns from a word in the upper row and another in the lower, and then fill them in the blanks. Make sure that you use them in the correct form.

- You have to go through the _____ at an airport for an international flight.
- You must take your violin on the plane as _____ when you check in.
- It is very convenient to use a taxi for a(n) _____ in the city centre.
- On a plane you have to fasten your _____.
- In a hotel when you need _____, you can ask the receptionist for the password for the wi-fi.

V. Complete the sentences with *a, an, the* or *zero article (Ø)*

- There isn't _____ airport near where I live. _____ nearest airport is 70 miles away.
a. An - A b. an - The c. the - A d. the -
The
- David is _____ sailor. He spends most of his life at _____ sea.
a. Ø - a b. a - Ø c. a - a d.
a - the
- "Paul, where is _____ Spanish dictionary? I'm writing _____ essay in Spanish and I need it."
a. A - an b. Ø - the c. the - an d. Ø -

Θ

4. _____ Titanic, _____ British steamer, sank in the North Atlantic after hitting an iceberg.

a. A – the b. Θ - a c. The – the d. The
- a

5. _____ changed a lot in the last 30 years.

a. Life has b. A life has c. The life has d.
Lives have

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

My Experience on an Elephant Safari

We went on an elephant safari at a place (1)_____ Camp Jubalani in South Africa. They take visitors on safaris twice a day: once in the morning and once at night. Guests can go on as many rides as they like, but they don't (2)_____ you ride an elephant if you are younger than twelve years old. Luckily, I'm fifteen! On our first safari, I felt really scared. I remember thinking we could have gone on a beach holiday instead! As I was climbing onto the elephant, I wondered how I was going to control (3)_____ a big animal. I soon (4)_____ that I ought not to have worried so much. They made you sit with an experienced elephant trainer. You can't ride (5)_____ your own. During the trek, we saw giraffes, zebras, lions and rhinos. My parents took a lot of photos. I would have taken photos myself but I'd (6)_____ my camera in my room. I can't remember exactly how long the safaris lasted, but it must have been a couple of hours because we got (7)_____ just (8)_____ for lunch. We stayed at Camp jubalani for three days and went on four elephant sarafis. We could have gone on more than that, but on one of the days my mum wasn't very well. Anyway, it was a (9)_____ holiday. I'd definitely (10)_____ an elephant safari.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. call
calling | B. is called | C. called | D. |
| 2. A. let | B. make | C. want | D. allow |
| 3. A. so | B. such | C. that | D. what |
| 4. A. decided | B. looked | C. recognized | D. realized |
| 5. A. by | B. on | C. with | D. for |
| 6. A. taken | B. brought | C. left | D. put |
| 7. A. back | B. off | C. up | D. in |
| 8. A. at times | B. late | C. on time | D. in time |
| 9. A. welcoming | B. fantastic | C. pleased | D. delicious |
| 10. A. demand | B. offer | C. suggest | D. recommend |

VII. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Travel and tourism are very important to millions of people over the world. In every country you can find people that work in travel and tourism. Some countries need the

money from tourism to help their people survive. It is necessary for these places that travel and tourism continue to expand and bring money to their regions.

However, travel and tourism have negative aspects. Planes, buses, boats and other means of transportation that carry travellers and tourists cause pollution. Moreover, some people do things on a holiday they would never think of doing at home. For example, many traveller use a lot of water and electricity when they stay in hotels. They forget to turn off the lights or even leave televisions and air conditioning units on when they leave the room. On top of that, it is often difficult or impossible for travellers to recycle items, so they end up leaving large amounts of waste behind. That's why it is important for people to travel wisely and respect the places they visit.

There are ways you can travel and be environmentally friendly. Here are some tips to help you:

1. Don't throw rubbish on streets, beaches or in the countryside.
2. Don't use too much water or electricity.
3. Taste the local and national dishes of the country.
4. Buy local products or souvenirs.
5. Don't buy any products made from endangered species; sea turtle shells or bags made from reptiles or other animals.

1. Why is tourism important to some countries?

.....
.....

2. How does tourism affect the environment?

.....
.....

3. What do many people use a lot when staying in hotels?

.....
.....

4. Why do some tourists end up leaving large amounts of waste behind?

.....
.....

5. What shouldn't you do to be environmentally friendly? Mention two ideas.

.....
.....

VIII. Use the words and phrases given to write meaningful sentences.

Positive and negative effects of tourism

Tourism can bring many economic and social benefits, but mass tourism is also associated with negative effects.

1. First/ tourism/ create/ jobs/ tourism industry/ and/ other sectors/ such/ retail and transportation.

.....
.....
.....
.....

2. However/ jobs/ created/ tourism/ often seasonal/ and/ poorly paid.

.....
.....
.....
.....

3. Second/ tourism/ encourage/ preservation/ traditional customs/ handicrafts/ festivals/ but/ interaction/ tourists/ also lead/ erosion/ traditional cultures/ values.

.....

4. Finally/ ecotourism/ help/ conservation/ wildlife/ generating funds/ maintaining national parks.

.....

5. Nevertheless/ it/ also cause/ pollution/ through traffic emissions/ littering/ noise.

.....

TOURISM (UNIT 8)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>affordable (adj)</i>	/ə'fɔ:dəbl/	có thể chi trả được, hợp túi tiền	<i>breathtaking (adj)</i>	/'breθteɪkɪŋ/	ấn tượng, hấp dẫn
<i>air (v)</i>	/eə(r)/	phát sóng (đài, vô tuyến)	<i>check-in (n)</i>	/tʃek-ɪn/	việc làm thủ tục lên máy bay
<i>checkout (n)</i>	/'tʃekəʊt/	thời điểm rời khỏi khách sạn	<i>confusion (n)</i>	/kən'fju:ʒn/	sự hoang mang, bối rối
<i>exotic (adj)</i>	/ɪg'zɒtɪk/	kì lạ	<i>erode away (v)</i>	/ɪ'rəʊd ə'weɪ/	mòn đi
<i>explore (v)</i>	/ɪk'splɔ:(r)/	thăm hiểm	<i>hyphen (n)</i>	/'haɪfɪn/	dấu gạch ngang
<i>imperial (adj)</i>	/ɪm'piəriəl/	(thuộc về) hoàng đế	<i>inaccessible (adj)</i>	/ɪˌnæksə'sesəbl/	không thể vào/tiếp cận được
<i>magnificence (n)</i>	/mæg'nɪfɪsns/	sự nguy nga, lộng lẫy, tráng lệ	<i>not break the bank (idiom)</i>	/nɒt breɪk ðə bæŋk/	không tốn nhiều tiền
<i>orchid (n)</i>	/'ɔ:kɪd/	hoa lan	<i>package tour (n)</i>	/'pækɪdʒ tuə(:)/	chuyến du lịch trọn gói
<i>pile-up (n)</i>	/paɪl-ʌp/	vụ tai nạn do nhiều xe đâm nhau	<i>promote (v)</i>	/prə'məʊt/	giúp phát triển, quảng bá
<i>pyramid (n)</i>	/'pɪrəɪmɪd/	kim tự tháp	<i>safari (n)</i>	/sə'fɑ:ri/	cuộc đi săn, cuộc hành trình (bằng đường bộ nhất là ở đông và nam phi)

<i>stalagmite (n)</i>	/stə'lægmaɪ /	măng đá	<i>stimulating (adj)</i>	/'stɪmjuleɪtɪŋ/	thú vị đầy phần khích
<i>touchdown (n)</i>	/'tʌtʃdaʊn/	sự hạ cánh	<i>varied (adj)</i>	/'veəriəd/	đa dạng
<i>lush (adj)</i>	/lʌʃ/	tươi tốt, xum xuê	<i>speciality (n)</i>	/,speʃi'æləti/	Đặc sản
<i>decide (v)</i> <i>decision (n)</i> <i>make a decision</i>	/di'saɪd/ /di'sɪʒn/	Quyết định Đưa ra quyết định	<i>be into sth</i>		like it very much
<i>tease (v)</i>	/ti:z/	Trêu chọc, đùa	<i>adventure (n)</i> <i>adventurous (a)</i>	/əd'ventʃə(r) /əd'ventʃərəs/	Phiêu lưu, mạo hiểm
<i>reserve(v)</i> <i>reservation (n)</i>	/rɪ'zɜ:v/ /,rezə'veɪʃn/	Đặt chỗ trước	<i>expedition (n)</i>	/,ekspə'dɪʃn/	Cuộc viễn chinh, thám hiểm
<i>excursion (n)</i>	/ɪk'skɜ:ʃn/	Cuộc đi chơi, tham quan	<i>jet lag(n)</i>	/'dʒet læg/	Mệt mỏi sau chuyến bay dài
<i>standstill (n)</i>	/'stændstɪl/	Sự dừng lại, bế tắc	<i>terminal (n)</i>	/'tɜ:mɪnəl/	Nhà đón khách
<i>drawback (n)</i>	/'drɔ:bæk/	Hạn chế	<i>tailor-made(a)</i>	/,teɪlə 'meɪd/	May đo
<i>wildlife (n)</i>	/'waɪldlaɪf/	Thú vật, chim muông ... hoang dã	<i>bargain (n)</i>	/'bɑ:gən/	Món hời

II. Grammar: *Compound nouns*

Articles: a/ an and the

1. Compound nouns

A compound noun is a noun that is made with two or more words. A compound noun is usually [noun + noun] or [adjective + noun], but there are other combinations (see below). It is important to understand and recognize compound nouns. Each compound noun acts as a single unit and can be modified by adjectives and other nouns.

There are three forms for compound nouns:

1. open or spaced - space between words (**tennis shoe**)
2. hyphenated - hyphen between words (**six-pack**)
3. closed or solid - no space or hyphen between words (**bedroom**)

Here are some examples of compound nouns:

noun	+	noun	bus stop	Is this the bus stop for the number 12 bus?
			fire-fly	In the tropics you can see fire-flies at night.
			football	Shall we play football today?

adjective	+	noun	full moon	I always feel crazy at full moon .
			blackboard	Clean the blackboard please.
			software	I can't install this software on my PC.
verb(-ing)	+	noun	breakfast	We always eat breakfast at 8am.
			washing machine	Put the clothes in the red washing machine .
			swimming pool	What a beautiful swimming pool !
noun	+	verb(-ing)	sunrise	I like to get up at sunrise .
			haircut	You need a haircut .
			train-spotting	His hobby is train-spotting .
verb	+	preposition	check-out	Please remember that check-out is at 12 noon.
noun	+	prepositional phrase	mother-in-law	My mother-in-law lives with us.
preposition	+	noun	underworld	Do you think the police accept money from the underworld ?
noun	+	adjective	truckful	We need 10 truckfuls of bricks.

Pronunciation

Compound nouns tend to have more stress on the first word. In the phrase "pink ball", both words are equally stressed (as you know, adjectives and nouns are always stressed). In the compound noun "golf ball", the first word is stressed more (even though both words are nouns, and nouns are always stressed). Since "golf ball" is a compound noun we consider it as a single noun and so it has a single main stress - on the first word. Stress is important in compound nouns. For example, it helps us know if somebody said "a GREEN HOUSE" (a house which is painted green) or "a GREENhouse" (a building made of glass for growing plants inside).

Plural Forms of Compound Nouns

In general we make the plural of a compound noun by adding -s to the "base word" (the most "significant" word). Look at these examples:

singular	plural
a tennis shoe	three tennis shoes
one assistant headmaster	five assistant headmasters
the sergeant major	some sergeants major
a mother-in-law	two mothers-in-law
an assistant secretary of state	three assistant secretaries of state
my toothbrush	our toothbrushes
a woman-doctor	four women-doctors
a doctor of philosophy	two doctors of philosophy
singular	plural
a passerby, a passer-by	two passersby , two passers-by

Note that there is some variation with words like spoonful or truckful. The old style was to say spoonsful or trucksful for the plural. Today it is more usual to say spoonfuls or truckfuls. Both the old style (spoonsful) and the new style (spoonfuls) are normally acceptable, but you should be consistent in your choice. Here are some examples:

	old style plural (very formal)	new style plural
teaspoonful	3 teaspoonsful of sugar	3 teaspoonfuls of sugar
truckful	5 trucksful of sand	5 truckfuls of sand
bucketful	2 bucketsful of water	2 bucketfuls of water
cupful	4 cupsful of rice	4 cupfuls of rice

Some compound nouns have no obvious base word and you may need to consult a dictionary to find the plural:

- **higher-ups**
- **also-rans**
- **go-betweens**
- **has-beens**
- **good-for-nothings**
- **grown-ups**

Note that with compound nouns made of [noun + noun] the first noun is like an adjective and therefore does not usually take an -s. A tree that has apples has many apples, but we say an **apple tree**, not ~~apples tree~~; **matchbox** not ~~matchesbox~~; **toothbrush** not ~~teethbrush~~.

With compound nouns made of [noun + noun] the second noun takes an -s for plural. The first noun acts like an adjective and as you know, adjectives in English are invariable. Look at these examples:

long plural form becomes →	plural compound noun [noun + noun]
100 trees with apples	100 apple trees
1,000 cables for telephones	1,000 telephone cables
20 boxes for tools	20 tool boxes
10 stops for buses	10 bus stops
long plural form becomes →	plural compound noun [noun + noun]
4,000 wheels for cars	4,000 car wheels

2. Articles

a. Definite article: The

We use the definite article in front of a noun when we believe the **hearer/reader knows** exactly what we are referring to.

- because there is **only one**:

The Pope is visiting Russia.

The moon is very bright tonight.

The Shah of Iran was deposed in 1979.

This is why we use the definite article with a superlative adjective:

He is **the tallest boy** in the class.

It is **the oldest building** in the town.

- because there is **only one in that place** or in those surroundings:

We live in a small village next to the church.	=	(the church in our village)
Dad, can I borrow the car?	=	(the car that belongs to our family)

When we stayed at my grandmother's house we went to the beach every day.	=	(the beach near my grandmother's house)
Look at the boy in the blue shirt over there.	=	(the boy I am pointing at)

- *because we have **already mentioned** it:*

A woman who fell 10 metres from High Peak was lifted to safety by a helicopter.
The woman fell while climbing.

The rescue is the latest in a series of incidents on High Peak. In January last year two men walking on **the peak** were killed in a fall.

We also use the definite article:

- *to say something about **all the things** referred to by a noun:*

The wolf is not really a dangerous animal (= Wolves are not really dangerous animals)

The kangaroo is found only in Australia (= Kangaroos are found only in Australia)

The heart pumps blood around the body. (= Hearts pump blood around bodies) *We use the definite article in this way to talk about **musical instruments**:* Joe plays the piano really well.(= Joe can play any piano) She is learning the guitar.(= She is learning to play any guitar)

- *to refer to a **system** or **service**:*

How long does it take on **the train**?

I heard it on **the radio**.

You should tell **the police**.

- *With **adjectives** like rich, poor, elderly, unemployed to talk about **groups of people**:*

Life can be very hard for **the poor**.

I think **the rich** should pay more taxes.

She works for a group to help **the disabled**.

The definite article with names:

We do not normally use the definite article with names:

William Shakespeare wrote Hamlet.

Paris is the capital of France.

Iran is in Asia.

But we do use the definite article with:

- **countries** whose names include words like **kingdom**, **states** or **republic**:

the United Kingdom; the Kingdom of Nepal; the United States; the People's Republic of China.

- **countries** which have **plural nouns** as their names:

the Netherlands; the Philippines

- **geographical features**, such as mountain ranges, groups of islands, rivers, seas, oceans and canals:

the Himalayas; the Canaries; the Atlantic; the Atlantic Ocean; the Amazon; the Panama Canal.

- **newspapers**:

The Times; The Washington Post

- well known **buildings** or **works of art**:

the Empire State Building; the Taj Mahal; the Mona Lisa; the Sunflowers •

organisations:

the United Nations; the Seamen's Union

• **hotels, pubs and restaurants*:**

the Ritz; the Ritz Hotel; the King's Head; the Déjà Vu

*Note: We do not use the definite article if the name of the hotel or restaurant is the name of the owner, e.g., Brown's; Brown's Hotel; Morel's; Morel's Restaurant, etc.

• **families:**

the Obamas; the Jacksons

b. Indefinite articles: A/ an

- We use the indefinite article, a/an, with **count nouns** when the **hearer/reader does not know** exactly which one we are referring to:
Police are searching for **a** 14 year-old girl.
- We also use it to show the person or thing is **one of a group**: She is **a** pupil at London Road School.

Police have been searching for a 14 year-old girl who has been missing since Friday.

Jenny Brown, a pupil at London Road School, is described as 1.6 metres tall with short blonde hair.

She was last seen wearing a blue jacket, a blue and white blouse and dark blue jeans and blue shoes.

Anyone who has information should contact the local police on 0800349781.

- We do **not** use an indefinite article with **plural nouns** and **uncount nouns**:
She was wearing blue shoes. (= plural noun)
She has short blonde hair. (= uncount noun)

Police have been searching for a 14 year-old girl who has been missing since Friday.

Jenny Brown, a pupil at London Road School, is described as 1.6 metres tall with short blonde hair.

She was last seen wearing a blue jacket, a blue and white blouse and dark blue jeans and blue shoes.

Anyone who has information should contact the local police on 0800349781.

- We use a/an to say what someone is or what **job** they do:
My brother is **a doctor**.
George is **a student**.
- We use a/an with a singular noun to say something about **all things** of that kind:
A man needs friends. (= All men need friends)
A dog likes to eat meat. (= All dogs like to eat meat)

III. Pronunciation: Tone in asking for information

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. stimulate | B. organise | C. efficient | D. terminal |
| 2. A. challenge | B. promote | C. affect | D. machine |
| 3. A. discover | B. addition | C. fantastic | D. habitat |
| 4. A. wildlife | B. afford | C. mountain | D. passport |
| 5. A. magnificence | B. geography | C. expedition | D. accommodate |

II. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only.

Buffet	Caravan	Cruise	Destination	Harbour
Luggage	Resort	Ticket	Tour	Trip

- The manager is away on business _____ so I am in charge of the office now.
 - If you want to see historical places it is a good idea to go on a guided _____.
 - They met on board of a luxurious yacht during a _____ in the Caribbean.
 - After changing trains three times we arrived at our _____ in the end.
 - If you have any excess _____ you must pay extra money.
 - We spent our last holidays at a camping site, living in a _____.
 - They spent two weeks at a fashionable ski _____ in Switzerland.
 - Nam checked to make sure he had his _____ and passport.
 - On most trains there is a _____ where you can eat a snack or something hot.
 - As soon as the ship left the _____ everybody got seasick.
- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. Trip | 6. Caravan |
| 2. Tour | 7. Resort |
| 3. Cruise | 8. Ticket |
| 4. Destination | 9. Buffet |
| 5. Luggage | 10. harbour |

III. Circle A, B, C, or D to indicate the best option for each blank in the sentences.

- You can learn a lot about the local _____ by talking to local people.
A. Territory B. **area** C. land D. nation
- It's good to have someone to _____ you when you are visiting a new place.
A. Lead B. take C. **guide** D. bring
- When you _____ your destination, your tour guide will meet you at the airport.
A. Arrive B. **reach** C. get D. achieve
- It can be quite busy here during the tourist _____.
A. **Season** B. phase C. period D. stage
- Make sure you _____ a hotel before you come to our island, especially in the summer.
A. **Book** B. keep C. put D. buy
- Captain Cook discovered Australia on a _____ to the Pacific.
A. Vacation B. travel C. cruise D. **voyage**
- Most tourist attractions in London charge an admission _____.
A. Fare B. ticket C. **fee** D. pay
- The hotel where we are _____ is quite luxurious.
A. Living B. existing C. remaining D. **staying**

IV. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I'm very happy that my parents let me make my own _____ about holiday destinations DECIDE
2. At this time it may not be easy to find accommodation with _____ prices. REASON
3. _____, our flight was cancelled and we had to spend one night at the airport. LUCK
4. The Opera House is one of the most popular tourist _____ in Sydney. ATTRACT
5. They live in a remote area which is _____ except by horse. ACCESS
6. They were the first _____ to cross the country from south to north. EXPLORE
7. What has been the most _____ experience in your life as a tourist guide, Ms Lien? CHALLENGE
8. More and more foreigners like travelling to Vietnam for holiday because things are _____ here. AFFORD
9. British cavers have made some important _____ about Son Duong Cave. DISCOVER
10. For the more _____ tourists, there are trips into the mountains with a local guide. ADVENTURE

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Decision</i> | 6. <i>Explorers</i> |
| 2. <i>Reasonable</i> | 7. <i>Challenging</i> |
| 3. <i>Unluckily</i> | 8. <i>Affordable</i> |
| 4. <i>Attractions</i> | 9. <i>Discoveries</i> |
| 5. <i>Inaccessible</i> | 10. <i>Adventurous</i> |

V. Read the article about Hawaii, and complete the gaps with *a, an, the* or *zero* article (Ø).
Welcome To Hawaii

Hawaii (1)_____ popular holiday destination. But which island should you choose for your holiday in (2)_____ paradise?

All (3)_____ international flights go from the capital, Honolulu, on Oahu Island. Oahu is the most populated island and (4)_____ home of the famous Waikiki beach. International surfing competitions take place here. Oahu is also (5)_____ place for shops, restaurants and the best nightlife.

MAUI

Maui is the most romantic island and ideal for relaxing. There are (6)_____ white sandy beaches with turquoise water, and in summer the waves are small and perfect for inexperienced surfers. In winter, you can see whales in the warm water. Maui is ideal for nature lovers and visitors fall in love with (7)_____ island's natural beauty.

BIG ISLAND

Big island is cheaper and for the more adventurous visitors. You can go to (8)_____ top of the highest mountain 4000 metres above (9)_____ sea level and enjoy (10)_____ amazing view.

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1. A | 6. Ø |
| 2. Ø | 7. The |
| 3. The | 8. The |
| 4. Ø | 9. Ø |
| 5. The | 10. An |

VI. Form compound nouns from a word in the upper row and another in the lower, and then fill them in the blanks. Make sure that you use them in the correct form.

<i>Note</i>	<i>Earth</i>	<i>Hair</i>	<i>Ice</i>	<i>Bed</i>	<i>Key</i>	<i>Ear</i>	<i>Air</i>	<i>Arm</i>	<i>Cow</i>
<i>Berg</i>	<i>Phones</i>	<i>Craft</i>	<i>Chair</i>	<i>Boy</i>	<i>Quake</i>	<i>Cut</i>	<i>Book</i>	<i>Room</i>	<i>Board</i>

- This is my grandfather's favorite _____ made in the 19th century.
- The _____ landed safely at the airport.
- I use my _____ when I travel on business.
- My _____ is very small but nice.
- I asked my nephew to use his _____ because I did not like his music.
- The _____ loved his horses.
- The _____ measured 5.3 on the Richter scale.
- A(n) _____ can sink a ship.
- _____ is an input device.
- I need a(n) _____ at every two weeks.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>Armchair</i> | 6. <i>Cowboy</i> |
| 2. <i>Aircraft</i> | 7. <i>Earthquake</i> |
| 3. <i>Notebook</i> | 8. <i>Iceberg</i> |
| 4. <i>Bedroom</i> | 9. <i>Keyboard</i> |
| 5. <i>Earphones</i> | 10. <i>Haircut</i> |

<i>Bus</i>	<i>Washing</i>	<i>Sun</i>	<i>Green</i>	<i>Black</i>	<i>Blue</i>	<i>Soft</i>	<i>Foot</i>	<i>Swimming</i>	<i>Fire</i>
<i>Board</i>	<i>Ware</i>	<i>Bird</i>	<i>Ball</i>	<i>Stop</i>	<i>Flies</i>	<i>Pool</i>	<i>House</i>	<i>Rise</i>	<i>Machine</i>

- _____ is a type of bird.
- _____ is a place where we grow plants.
- We join a _____ in every summer holiday.
- Lots of _____ come at night in the summer holiday.
- We played _____ today for two hours.
- Teachers make us understand by writing properly on _____.
- Windows is an operating system _____ on every PC.
- I know how to wash clothes in a _____.
- I have to wait for bus number 12 at the _____.
- I wake up daily before the _____.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Bluebird</i> | 6. <i>Blackboard</i> |
| 2. <i>Greenhouse</i> | 7. <i>Software</i> |
| 3. <i>Swimming pool</i> | 8. <i>Washing machine</i> |
| 4. <i>Fireflies</i> | 9. <i>Bus stop</i> |
| 5. <i>Football</i> | 10. <i>Sunrise</i> |

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

The Maldives are a group of very small islands in the Indian Ocean, near Sri Lanka. It has the smallest (1)_____ of any Asian countries. There are about 1200 islands and there are people living on 200 of them. About 400,000 people live in the Maldives and 75,000 of them are (2)_____ the capital island, Malé. Malé is different from the other islands in the Maldives because it doesn't have any beaches. In fact, there is a small wall (3)_____ goes around the whole island.

It is very easy to get around the islands. When you (4)_____ on the airport island, you can take a *dhoni* and go to Malé. This is a small boat used for (5)_____ around the islands. *Dhoni* taxis go from the airport island to the capital island every fifteen minutes and (6)_____ midnight every half an hour. You can use these boats to visit other islands, too.

The Maldives are a popular place for scuba diving (7)_____ there are many wonderful fish in the water to see. Also, the water is very clear so when you are (8)_____ you can see for more than 50 metres! There are many professional diving schools with instructors. They speak many languages, so you can (9)_____ someone to help you. Of course, that's not all you can do on these beautiful islands. You can go whale and dolphin (10)_____, fishing, surfing, snorkeling, hiking or explore the towns.

- | | | | | |
|-----|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. | A. nation | B. Population | C. Area | D. Inhabitant |
| 2. | A. in | B. At | C. Above | D. On |
| 3. | A. who | B. Where | C. That | D. It |
| 4. | A. arrive | B. Travel | C. Depart | D. Leave |
| 5. | A. education | B. Transportation | C. Production | D. Translation |
| 6. | A. at | B. Before | C. On | D. After |
| 7. | A. although | B. Because | C. However | D. Furthermore |
| 8. | A. underwater | B. Underlevel | C. Undersea | D. Underneath |
| 9. | A. look | B. see | C. find | D. hold |
| 10. | A. playing | B. catching | C. hearing | D. watching |

VIII. Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

Son Doong Cave in Vietnam – Good Morning America

Son Doong Cave and Swallow Cave (En Cave) were recorded and broadcast on Good Morning America – a programme of ABC Television (USA). By being broadcast on Good Morning America (ABC Television), Son Doong Cave would be introduced widely to international travellers.

This is a good chance for Quang Binh tourism to promote the image of Son Doong – the biggest cave in Vietnam – to travellers around the world. Therefore, the film crew worked in the most favourable conditions. The programme was directly broadcast on satellite in May 2015.

The cave is a part of the underground system connecting over 150 other caves in Vietnam near Vietnam – Lao border with many caves such as Phong Nha Cave.

Son Doong Cave is compared equally to Mount Everest in terms of attraction. The biggest natural cave in the world is appreciated to be an interesting destination for a several-day tour, including exploring underground rivers, caves and camping ... The

overwhelming natural landscapes inside Son Doong Cave create an attraction by majestic and magnificent scenes. It takes months to end up a cave's round. In addition, the condition to join tours in Son Doong Cave is extremely high. Adventures must be in good mental and physical health to conquer the cave. Son Doong, the biggest cave in Vietnam, along with other attractions in Quang Binh, is an attractive destination for travelers, especially those who are fans of natural exploration. The first exploration tour was held in early August 2013. The first tour consisted of 6 people from the US, Russia, Australia, and Norway. They underwent 7 days and 6 nights to explore Son Doong Cave. There are a large number of tourists registering for next tours since then.

Task 1. Identify whether the statements are true (T), or false (F).

1. Thanks to the programme of Good Morning America on ABC Television, a large number of people around the world will know Son Doong Cave.
2. The film crew making the programme about the cave met a lot of problems from the local authorities.
3. There are many caves in Quang Binh province but Son Doong Cave may be the most well known.
4. The number of people climbing Mount Everest is the same as that exploring Son Doong Cave.
5. The exploration tour of Son Doong Cave is so hard that it requires tourists to have good physical and mental health.
6. Tourists can explore the cave in several months.

Task 2. Read the passage again and answer the questions.

7. When was the programme about Son Doong Cave on Good Morning America broadcast?
.....
.....
8. What can be found in the underground system in Quang Binh province?
.....
.....
9. In which aspect is Son Doong Cave compared to Mount Everest?
.....
.....
10. What activities can tourists do in the cave?
.....
.....
11. When was the first exploration tour held?
.....
.....
12. How long did the first group of tourists spend in the cave?
.....
.....

TASK 1

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. T | 4. F |
| 2. F | 5. T |
| 3. T | 6. F |

TASK 2

7. It was broadcast in May 2015.
8. It is the underground system connecting over 150 other caves near Vietnam-lao border.

9. *It is the attraction*
10. *They can explore underground rivers, caves and go camping.*
11. *It was held in early August 2013.*
12. *They spent 7 days and 6 nights.*

IX. Use the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2 – 5 words in total).

1. Lan hasn't decided where to go on holiday. **Mind**
Lan hasn't _____ about where to go on holiday.
2. We don't like travelling during peak season. **Into**
We _____ during peak season.
3. Scuba-diving is not really my cup of tea. **Interested** I
_____ scuba-diving.
4. No mountains in Western Europe are higher than Mount Blanc. **The** Mount
Blanc _____ Western Europe.
5. They require special permits to access Son Doong Cave. **To** Special
permits _____ Son Doong Cave.

1. *Made up her mind*
2. *Are not into travelling*
3. *Am not interested in*
4. *Is the highest mountain in*
5. *Are required to access*

X. Rewrite each of the sentences so that it means the same as the one before it.

1. You spent more money during the trip than I did.
I _____ didn't
.....
 2. Have you ever been to Kuala Lumpur before?
Is _____ this _____ your
.....?
 3. China is a huge tourist attraction; it has many old castles and pagodas.
As _____ China
.....
 4. I found this place rather boring.
I _____ wasn't
.....
 5. We last went to Spain three years ago.
It _____ is
.....
 6. We visited a magnificent old house on the plateau. The
.....
1. *I didn't spend as much money during the trip as you did.*
 2. *Is this your first time in/ visit to Kuala Lumpur?*
 3. *As China has many old castles and pagodas, it is a huge tourist attraction.*

4. *I wasn't very interested in this place.*
5. *It is three years since we last went to Spain.*
6. *The old house on the plateau that we visited was magnificent.*

XI. Use the following ideas to write a paragraph of around 100 words about the negative effects of tourism.

Negative effect: quality of life of the local community is changed

- Changes in lifestyle change
- Changes in cultural and traditional practices
- Changes in physical structure

Tourism can have some negative effects on the quality of life of the host community. First, too many tourists can cause lifestyle changes of the local residents. For example, alternation in local travel patterns to avoid tourist congestion and the avoidance of downtown shopping can damage a community socially and culturally. Second, there is the problem related to culture and custom changes. As local ethnic cultures alert to fit the needs of tourism, traditional and cultural practices many change. Third, hotels, restaurants and shops can push tourism development into residential areas, forcing changes on the physical structure of a community. In conclusion, the development of tourism can cause drawbacks to the local community (113 words)

TEST (Unit 8)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. package B. stalagmite C. lag D. safari
2. A. explore B. expedition C. resport D. environment
3. A. explore B. exotic C. explain D. excuse

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

4. A. original B. geography C. imperial **stimulating** D.
5. A. magnificence B. accessible C. affordable D. **destination**

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. If you pay a visit to Hue, you should once visit Lang Co beach where you can have the most relaxing time and admire the natural beauty of _____.
a. Views b. panoramas c. sights d. **landscapes**
2. Travelling to Ba Mun Island in Quang Ninh, tourists can explore on their own, following some natural _____ on the island.
a. **Trails** b. marks c. roads d. stretches
3. For people in Cam Thanh commune near Hoi An, the coconut wetlands provide fisheries, a beautiful area for _____ as well as an ideal refuge for boats during heavy storms.
a. Tourist b. tour c. **tourism** d. tour guide
4. In Binh Ba Island (Lobster Island), there are many beautiful beaches with white sand, clear water, blue sky, which is _____ for those who love nature and calmness.
a. Available b. famous c. good d. **suitable**

5. _____ domestic and foreign tourism will create demand for additional hotels and motels.
a. Increase b. **increased** c. increasing d. increasingly
6. Con Dao has not only prisons but also _____ natural landscapes.
a. Surprising b. shocking c. **stunning** d. extreme
7. Eight o'clock is _____ good time to phone Nick: he's always at home in _____ evening.
a. **Ø - the** b. a - a c. a - Ø d. a - an
8. Does it take _____ long time to get to _____ city centre?
a. Ø - the b. a - a c. **a - the** d. the - the
9. What do you think of _____ public transport in _____ Ha Noi?
a. Ø - Ø b. a - a c. a - Ø d. **the - Ø**
10. Parking is very difficult in _____ city centre, so my father always go there by _____ bus.
a. **The - Ø** b. the - the c. a - a d. a - Ø

IV. Form the compound nouns from a word in the upper row and another in the lower, and then fill them in the blanks. Make sure that you use them in the correct form.

1. You have to go through the _____ at an airport for an international flight.
2. You must take your violin on the plane as _____ when you check in.
3. It is very convenient to use a taxi for a(n) _____ in the city centre.
4. On a plane you have to fasten your _____.
5. In a hotel when you need _____, you can ask the receptionist for the password for the wi-fi.

1. *Passport control*
2. *Hand luggage*
3. *Sightseeing tour*
4. *Seatbelt*
5. *Internet access*

V. Complete the sentences with a, an, the or zero article (Ø)

1. There isn't _____ airport near where I live. _____ nearest airport is 70 miles away.
a. An - A b. **an - The** c. the - A d. the - The
2. David is _____ sailor. He spends most of his life at _____ sea.
a. Ø - a b. **a - Ø** c. a - a d. a - the
3. "Paul, where is _____ Spanish dictionary? I'm writing _____ essay in Spanish and I need it."
a. A - an b. Ø - the c. **the - an** d. Ø - Ø
4. _____ Titanic, _____ British steamer, sank in the North Atlantic after hitting an iceberg.
a. A - the b. Ø - a c. The - the d. **The - a**
5. _____ changed a lot in the last 30 years.

a. **Life has** b. A life has

c. The life has

d. Lives have

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

My Experience on an Elephant Safari

We went on an elephant safari at a place (1)_____ Camp Jubalani in South Africa. They take visitors on safaris twice a day: once in the morning and once at night. Guests can go on as many rides as they like, but they don't (2)_____ you ride an elephant if you are younger than twelve years old. Luckily, I'm fifteen! On our first safari, I felt really scared. I remember thinking we could have gone on a beach holiday instead! As I was climbing onto the elephant, I wondered how I was going to control (3)_____ a big animal. I soon (4)_____ that I ought not to have worried so much. They made you sit with an experienced elephant trainer. You can't ride (5)_____ your own. During the trek, we saw giraffes, zebras, lions and rhinos. My parents took a lot of photos. I would have taken photos myself but I'd (6)_____ my camera in my room. I can't remember exactly how long the safaris lasted, but it must have been a couple of hours because we got (7)_____ just (8)_____ for lunch. We stayed at Camp jubalani for three days and went on four elephant sarafis. We could have gone on more than that, but on one of the days my mum wasn't very well. Anyway, it was a (9)_____ holiday. I'd definitely (10)_____ an elephant safari.

1. A. call

B. is called

C. **called**

D. calling

2. A. **let**

B. make

C. want

D. allow

3. A. so

B. **such**

C. that

D. what

4. A. decided

B. looked

C. recognized

D. **realized**

5. A. by

B. **on**

C. with

D. for

6. A. taken

B. brought

C. **left**

D. put

7. A. **back**

B. off

C. up

D. in

8. A. at times

B. late

C. on time

D. **in time**

9. A. welcoming

B. **fantastic**

C. pleased

D. delicious

10. A. demand

B. offer

C. suggest

D. **recommend**

VII. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Travel and tourism are very important to millions of people over the world. In every country you can find people that work in travel and tourism. Some countries need the money from tourism to help their people survive. It is necessary for these places that travel and tourism continue to expand and bring money to their regions.

However, travel and tourism have negative aspects. Planes, buses, boats and other means of transportation that carry travellers and tourists cause pollution. Moreover, some people do things on a holiday they would never think of doing at home. For example, many traveller use a lot of water and electricity when they stay in hotels. They forget to turn off the lights or even leave televisions and air conditioning units on when they leave the room. On top of that, it is often difficult or impossible for travellers to recycle items, so

they end up leaving large amounts of waste behind. That's why it is important for people to travel wisely and respect the places they visit.

There are ways you can travel and be environmentally friendly. Here are some tips to help you:

6. Don't throw rubbish on streets, beaches or in the countryside.
7. Don't use too much water or electricity.
8. Taste the local and national dishes of the country.
9. Buy local products or souvenirs.
10. Don't buy any products made from endangered species; sea turtle shells or bags made from reptiles or other animals.

6. Why is tourism important to some countries?

.....
.....

7. How does tourism affect the environment?

.....
.....

8. What do many people use a lot when staying in hotels?

.....
.....

9. Why do some tourists end up leaving large amounts of waste behind?

.....
.....

10. What shouldn't you do to be environmentally friendly? Mention two ideas.

.....
.....

1. *Because it brings money to them/ because it provides them with money to help their people survive.*
2. *Means of transportation (such as planes, buses, boats) carrying travellers and tourists cause pollution.*
3. *They use a lot of water and electricity.*
4. *Because it is often difficult or impossible for them to recycle items.*
5. *We shouldn't throw rubbish on streets, beaches or in the countryside. We shouldn't use too much water or electricity. We shouldn't buy any products made from endangered species. (choose any of two)*

VIII. Use the words and phrases given to write meaningful sentences.

Positive and negative effects of tourism

Tourism can bring many economic and social benefits, but mass tourism is also associated with negative effects.

1. First/ tourism/ create/ jobs/ tourism industry/ and/ other sectors/ such/ retail and transportation.

First, tourism creates jobs in the tourism industry and in other sectors such as retail and transportation.

2. However/ jobs/ created/ tourism/ often seasonal/ and/ poorly paid.

However, jobs which are created by tourism are often seasonal and poorly paid.

3. Second/ tourism/ encourage/ preservation/ traditional customs/ handicrafts/ festivals/ but/ interaction/ tourists/ also lead/ erosion/ traditional cultures/ values.

Second, tourism encourages the preservation of traditional customs, handicrafts and festivals, but interaction with tourists can also lead to an erosion of traditional cultures and values.

4. Finally/ ecotourism/ help/ conservation/ wildlife/ generating funds/ maintaining national parks.

Finally, ecotourism helps conservation of wildlife by generating funds for maintaining

accent(n)	<i>n</i> <i>a</i> <i>t</i>	<i>/'æksent/</i>	giọng điệu	operate(v) operation(n)	<i>/'ɒpəreit/</i> <i>/,ɒpə'reɪʃn/</i>	đóng vai trò, vậ hành
-----------	----------------------------------	------------------	------------	----------------------------	--	--------------------------

i
o
n
a
l

p
a
r
k
s
.

5. N
e
v
e
r
t
h
e
l
e
s
s
/

i
t
/

also cause/ pollution/ through traffic emissions/ littering/ noise.

Nevertheless, it also causes pollution through traffic emissions, littering and noise.

Nevertheless, it also causes pollution through traffic emissions, littering and noise.

ENGLISH IN THE WORLD (Unit 9)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

bilingual(adj) bilingually(adv)	/baɪˈlɪŋɡwəl/ 	song ngữ	pick up(v) (a language)	/ˈpɪk,ʌp/ 	học 1 ngôn ngữ mặt xung quanh
dialect(n) dialectal(adj)	/ˈdaɪəlekt/ /ˌdaɪəˈlektəl/	tiếng địa phương thuộc về tiếng địa phương	punctual(adj)	/ˈpʌŋktʃuəl/ 	đúng giờ
dominance(n) dominant(adj)	/ˈdɒmɪnəns/ /ˈdɒmɪnənt/	sự chiếm ưu thế chiếm ưu thế	rusty(adj)	/ˈrʌsti/ 	lỗi thời, giảm d lâu ngày ko dù
establish(v) establishment(n)	/ɪˈstæblɪʃ/ /ɪsˈtæblɪʃmənt/	thành lập việc thành lập	simple(adj) simplicity(n)	/ˈsɪmpl/ /sɪmpˈlɪsəti/	đơn giản sự đơn giản
get by in (language)	/get baɪ ɪn/ 	cố gắng sử dụng 1 ngôn ngữ	variety(n)	/vəˈraɪəti/ 	thể loại
global(adj)	/ˈɡləʊbl/ 	toàn cầu	term(n)	/tɜːm/ 	kì học, thuật ng
flexible(adj) flexibility(n)	/ˈfleksəbl/ /ˌfleksɪˈbɪləti/	linh hoạt sự linh hoạt	master(v)	/ˈmɑːstə/ 	làm chủ
imitate(v) imitation(n)	/ˈɪmɪˌteɪ/ /ˌɪmɪˈteɪʃən/	bắt chước sự bắt chước	release(v,n)	/rɪˈliːs/ 	phát hành, thoát
immersion school	/ˈɪməːʃn /skuːl/	trường học nơi 1 ngôn ngữ khác tiếng mẹ đẻ đc sử dụng hoàn toàn	estimate(v)	/ˈestɪmɪt - ˈestɪmeɪt/	đánh giá, ước lư
massive(adj)	/ˈmæsɪv/ 	to lớn	multinational(adj)	/ˌmʌltiˈnæʃə nəl/	đa quốc gia
mother tongue(n)	/ˈmʌðə ˌtʌŋɡ/ 	tiếng mẹ đẻ	derivative(adj)	/dɪˈrɪvətɪv/ 	bắt nguồn, dẫn x
			runner – up(n)	/ˈrʌnər,ʌp/ 	á quân
official(adj)	/əˈfɪʃəl/ 	chính thức	settle(v) settlement(n)	/ˈsetl/ /ˈsetlmənt/	định cư, dàn xếp
openness(n)	/ˈəʊpənəs/ 	độ mở	certificate(n,v)	/səˈtɪfɪkət/ 	(cấp)giấy chứng nhận bằng

II. G

R

A

M

M

AR

1. Conditional type 2

If + S1 + V (quá khứ), S2 + would/might/could... + V (infinitive) E.g:

If it didn't rain now, we would go on a picnic.

* Đảo ngữ:

Were + S1 + (not) + O, S2 + would/might/could... + V (infinitive)

Eg: If I were a bird, I would fly -> Were I a bird, I would fly.

Were + S1 + to V(infinitive), S2 + would/might/could... + V (infinitive) Eg:

If I learned Russian, I would read a Russian book.

_> Were I to learn Russian, I would read a Russian book.

2. Relative clauses

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. language | B. accent | C. grammar | D. mistake |
| 2. A. bilingual | B. contribute | C. guarantee | D. admission |
| 3. A. translate | B. pronounce | C. persuade | D. borrow |
| 4. A. official | B. interview | C. adjective | D. dominant |
| 5. A. certificate | B. education | C. derivative | D. approximate |

II. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only.

accent	bilingual	conversation	dialect	imitate
intonation	knowledge	look up	official	vocabulary

1. The teacher has done a quick quiz to check the students' _____ of the English language.
2. English has the largest with about 500,000 words and 300,000 technical terms.
3. Paul speaks English with a strong French _____, doesn't he?
4. Rising _____ describes how the voice rises at the end of a sentence.
5. My friend is _____ because she speaks both English and Vietnamese fluently.
6. You can quickly _____ a word's definition from the online dictionary.
7. I think she is speaking a different English _____ as it has different words and grammar.
8. English is the _____ language in this country and government must do its business in English.
9. In my opinion, it's very difficult for an Englishman to _____ a real American accent.
10. I had an interesting _____ with a native English speaker at the meeting this morning.

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I'm interested in the study on the _____ and differences between the two languages. SIMILAR
2. Nhung can speak English much more _____ than her sister can. FLUENCY
3. It's said that many English words have been _____ over the centuries. SIMPLE
4. Computers offer a much greater degree of _____ in the way work is organized. FLEXIBLE
5. We are going to review the eight parts of _____ in SPEAK the next three lessons.
6. His father has been working as a _____ of technical TRANSLATE texts for over ten years.
7. Ivan can write almost like a native speaker, but his _____ is terrible. PRONOUNCE
8. Your aunt is very _____ about English literature, isn't she? KNOW
9. Since its _____ in 1945, the United Nations has played a dominant role in the development of international law. ESTABLISH
10. Information related to _____ in English Language Teaching can be found in this book. OPEN

1. similarities 2. fluently 3. simplified 4. flexibility 5. speech

6. translator 7. pronunciation 8. knowledge 9. establishment 10. openness

IV. Complete the following conditional sentences type 2 using the correct form Oĩ the verbs in brackets.

1. If I (be) _____ weak in speaking English, I (practise) _____ speaking it more.
2. If you (live) _____ in Australia, you (use) _____ English every day.
3. She (not speak) _____ fluently if she (not study) _____ at an international school.
4. Mr. Quang (send) _____ his son to a school in England if he (be) _____ richer.
5. If I (not understand) _____ the lesson, I (ask) _____ my teacher to explain it again.
6. I (tell) _____ you if I (know) _____ the meaning of this word.
7. If he (not be) _____ bilingual, he (not be) _____ able to join our conversation.
8. Which country you (choose) _____ to improve your English if you (have) chance, Phong?
9. I (buy) _____ an English dictionary if my parents (send) _____ me money.
10. If we (not have) _____ our English friends, we (not imitate) _____ their accent.

V. Combine the following sentences using an appropriate relative clause

1. This is the IELTS practice test book. I have told you about it.
.....
2. We have just moved to a new neighbourhood. There are a lot of English families there.
.....
3. Mrs. Nga has a friend. Her daughter is studying English in Australia.
.....
4. The English teacher is excellent. You met him at the meeting yesterday.
.....
5. I still remember the day. I first spoke to an English professor on that day.
.....
6. The man is a friend of my father. He helped me with my pronunciation.
.....
7. A student came late. I borrowed his English dictionary.
.....
8. The language is called Singlish. People speak it in Singapore.
.....
9. I recently went back to my school. I learned my first English words here thirty years ago.
.....
10. The lady is an interpreter. My mother has worked with her for a long time.
.....

VI. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. The language that you learn to speak from birth is _language.
A. official B. first C. second D. foreign
2. There are many _____ of English all over the world such as British English, American English and Indian English.
A. speakers B. terms C. dialogues D. varieties

3. It _____ is not easy to a foreign language without communicating with the native speakers regularly.

- A. translate B. simplify C. master D. challenge

4. If you want to improve your speaking skill, you should attend the courses that are taught in a way.

- A. traditional B. domestic
C. lexical D. communicative

5. Reading helps you learn vocabulary easily as you will _____ new words without even realising it when you read.

- A. pick up B. give up C. face up D. look up

6. The picture reminds him of the time _____ he studied in New York.

- A. which B. when C. where D. why

7. Mike comes from a city _____ is located in the southern part of England.

- A. where B. who C. when D. that

8. The children _____ attend that English school receive good education.

- A. who B. whom C. which D. whose

9. If I had more time I _____ a Business English course.

- A. will take B. would take C. take D. took 10. They could understand our conversation if they _____ some English.

- A. knew B. would know C. will know D. Know VII.

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each question.

Over the past 600 years, English has grown from a language of few speakers to become the dominant language of international communication. English as we know it today emerged around 1350, after having incorporated many elements of French that were introduced following the Norman invasion of 1066. Until the 1600s, English was, for the most part, spoken only in England and had not extended even as far as Wales, Scotland, or Ireland. However, during the course of the next two centuries, English began to spread around the globe as a result of exploration, trade (including slave trade), colonisation, and missionary work. Thus, small enclaves of English speakers became established and grew in various parts of the world. As these communities **proliferated**, English gradually became the primary language of international business, banking and diplomacy.

Currently, about 80 percent of the information stored on computer systems worldwide is English. Two-thirds of the world's science writing is in English, and English is the main language of technology, advertising, media, international airports, and air traffic controllers. Today there are more than 700 million English users in the world, and over half of these are normative speakers, constituting the largest number of normative users than any other language in the world.

1. What is the main topic of this passage?

- A. The French influence on the English Language.
B. The history of the English language.
C. The expansion of English as an international language.
D. The use of English for science and technology.

2. Approximately when did English begin to be used beyond England?

- A. In 1066 B. Around 1350
C. Before 1600 D. After 1600

3. According to the passage, all of the following contributed to the spread of English around the world EXCEPT _____ .

- A. the slave trade B. the Norman invasion
C. missionaries D. colonisation

4. The underlined word "proliferated" in the passage is closest in meaning to ____ .
 A. prospered B. organized C. disbanded D. expanded
5. It can be inferred from the passage that ____ .
 A. English first appeared more than a thousand years ago.
 B. England colonised different parts of the world in early 2nd millennium.
 C. English is taught in primary schools all over the world.
 D. English is not the language with the largest native speakers in the world.

VIII. Each sentence below contains an error. Underline it and write the correct answer in the space provided. Example:

0. My brother buys some English books and CDs last week. 0/ bought
1. I don't know the reason when she went to Australia instead 1 / _____ of Britain to study English.
2. If I were a native speaker of English, I will help you practise 2/ _____ speaking English every day.
3. I'd like you to meet my friend who you will be studying with 3/ _____ him next year.
4. We couldn't speak fluent English if we don't use it in 4/ _____ everyday conversations.
5. My sister is studying at a university that many American 5/ _____ and Australian professors are working.

IX. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. Mr. Binh uses English every day because he works with some Australians. If Mr. Binh _____
2. I received a letter this morning and it had good news.
 The letter that _____ 3.
 You don't have an English certificate, so you cannot enroll in thi§ course.
 You could _____ 4.
 My mother is talking with an Englishwoman.
 The woman with _____
5. I think you should read English papers to improve your reading skill.
 If I _____

X. Use the ideas below to write a paragraph of around 100 words about why English is important in your daily life.

- * A means to have access to worldwide information
- * Recreation: read English books, listen to English songs, watch English movies, TV shows
- * A useful instrument for travelling

.....

....

.....

....

.....

....

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

accent(n) w o p d s	/ˈæksent/	giọng điệu	operate(v) operation(n)	/ˈɒpəreɪt/ /,ɒpə'reɪʃn/	đóng vai trò, vậ hành
bilingual(adj) bilingually(adv)	/baɪˈlɪŋgwəl/	song ngữ	pick up(v) (a language)	/ˈpɪk,ʌp/	học 1 ngôn ngữ mặt xung quanh
dialect(n) dialectal(adj)	/ˈdaɪəlekt/ /,daɪəˈlektəl/	tiếng địa phương thuộc về tiếng địa phương	punctual(adj)	/ˈpʌŋktʃuəl/	đúng giờ
dominance(n) dominant(adj)	/ˈdɒmɪnəns/ /ˈdɒmɪnənt/	sự chiếm ưu thế chiếm ưu thế	rusty(adj)	/ˈrʌsti/	lỗi thời, giảm d lâu ngày ko dùng
establish(v) establishment(n)	/ɪˈstæblɪʃ/ /ɪsˈtæblɪʃmənt/	thành lập việc thành lập	simple(adj) simplicity(n)	/ˈsɪmpl/ /sɪmpˈlɪsəti/	đơn giản sự đơn giản
get by in (language)	/get baɪ ɪn/	cố gắng sử dụng 1 ngôn ngữ	variety(n)	/vəˈraɪəti/	thể loại
global(adj)	/ˈɡləʊbl/	toàn cầu	term(n)	/tɜːm/	kì học, thuật ng
flexible(adj) flexibility(n)	/ˈfleksəbl/ /,fleksɪˈbɪləti/	linh hoạt sự linh hoạt	master(v)	/ˈmɑːstə/	làm chủ
imitate(v) imitation(n)	/ˈɪmɪˌteɪ/ /,ɪmɪˈteɪʃən/	bắt chước sự bắt chước	release(v,n)	/rɪˈliːs/	phát hành, thoát
immersion school	/ɪˈmɔːʃn /skuːl/	trường học nơi 1 ngôn ngữ khác tiếng mẹ đẻ để sử dụng hoàn toàn	estimate(v)	/ˈestɪmɪt - ˈestɪmeɪt/	đánh giá, ước lư
massive(adj)	/ˈmæsɪv/	to lớn	multinational(adj)	/ˌmʌltiˈnæʃə nəl/	đa quốc gia
mother tongue(n)	/ˈmʌðə ˌtʌŋ/	tiếng mẹ đẻ	derivative(adj)	/dɪˈrɪvətɪv/	bắt nguồn, dẫn x
			runner – up(n)	/ˈrʌnər,ʌp/	á quân
official(adj)	/əˈfɪʃəl/	chính thức	settle(v) settlement(n)	/ˈsetl/ /ˈsetlmənt/	định cư, dàn xếp

openness(n)	/ˈəʊpənəs/	độ mở	certificate(n,v)	/sə'tɪfɪkət/	(cấp)giấy chứng nhận bằng
-------------	------------	-------	------------------	--------------	---------------------------------

II. GRAMMAR

1. Conditional type 2

Câu điều kiện loại 2 là câu nêu lên tình huống giả định, không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại, không có thực ở hiện tại

If + S1 + V (quá khứ), S2 + would/might/could... + V (infinitive)

E.g: If it didn't rain now, we would go on a picnic.

Note:

* Trong câu điều kiện loại II, nếu mệnh đề “if” sử dụng động từ “to be” ở thì quá khứ đơn thì ta chỉ sử dụng “to be” là “were” với tất cả các ngôi. Eg: - If I **were** you, I **wouldn't stay** at home now

* Đảo ngữ:

Were + S1 + (not) + O, S2 + would/might/could... + V (infinitive)

Eg: If I were a bird, I would fly -> Were I a bird, I would fly.

Were + S1 + to V(infinitive), S2 + would/might/could... + V (infinitive) Eg:

If I learned Russian, I would read a Russian book.

_> Were I to learn Russian, I would read a Russian book.

2. Relative clauses

2.1. Định nghĩa

- Mệnh đề quan hệ là mệnh đề phụ được nối với mệnh đề chính bởi các đại từ quan hệ (who, whom, whose, which, that) hay các trạng từ quan hệ như (where, when, why). Mệnh đề quan hệ đứng ngay đằng sau danh từ, đại từ trong mệnh đề chính để bổ sung ý nghĩa cho danh từ, đại từ ấy, phân biệt danh từ đại từ ấy với các danh từ đại từ khác. Chức năng của nó giống như một tính từ do vậy nó còn được gọi là mệnh đề tính ngữ.

2.2. CÁC ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ

1. **Who:** -Là đại từ quan hệ chỉ người làm chủ ngữ, đứng sau tiền ngữ chỉ người để làm chủ ngữ cho động từ đứng sau nó.-Theo sau who là một động từ

Eg: The man who is sitting by the fire is my father. ->That is the boy who helped me to find your house.

2. **Whom:** -Là đại từ quan hệ chỉ người làm tân ngữ, đứng sau tiền ngữ chỉ người để làm tân ngữ cho động từ đứng sau nó.-Theo sau whom là một chủ ngữ

Eg: The woman whom you saw yesterday is my aunt.->The boy whom we are looking for is Tom.

3. **Which:**Là đại từ quan hệ chỉ vật, làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ cho động từ sau nó. -Theo sau which có thể là một động từ hoặc một chủ ngữ.

Eg: This is the book. I like it best.=> This is the book which I like best.

The hat is red. It is mine.=> The hat which is red is mine.

-Khi which làm tân ngữ, ta có thể lược bỏ *which*

Eg: This is the book I like best . .The dress (which) I bought yesterday is very beautiful.

4. **That:** Là đại từ quan hệ chỉ cả người lẫn vật, có thể được dùng thay cho Who, Whom,

Which trong mệnh đề quan hệ thuộc loại Restricted Clause (Mệnh đề xác định) Eg:

That is the book that I like best.=>That is the bicycle that belongs to Tom.

My father is the person that I admire most.

I can see the girl and her dog that are running in the park.

5.**Whose:**Là đại từ quan hệ chỉ người, thay cho tính từ sở hữu. Whose cũng được dùng cho of which.

-Theo sau Whose luôn là 1 danh từ

Eg: The boy is Tom. You borrowed his bicycle yesterday.

=> The boy whose bicycle you borrowed yesterday is Tom.

John found a cat. Its leg was broken.

⇒ John found a cat whose leg was broken.

2.3. CÁC TRẠNG TỪ QUAN HỆ

1. When: là trạng từ quan hệ chỉ thời gian, đứng sau tiền ngữ chỉ thời gian, dùng thay cho at, on, in + which, then

Eg: May Day is the day when people hold a meeting. (= on which)

I'll never forget the day when I met her. (=on which)

That was the time when he managed the company. (= at which)

2. Where: là trạng từ quan hệ chỉ nơi chốn, thay cho a, on, in + which; there)

Eg: That is the house where we used to live. (= in which)

Do you know the country where I was born?

Hanoi is the place where I like to come.

3. Why: là trạng từ quan hệ chỉ lí do, đứng sau tiền ngữ “the reason”, dùng thay cho “for the reason”

Eg: Please tell me the reason why you are so sad. (= for which)

He told me the reason why he had been absent from class the day before.

2.4. CÁC LOẠI MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ: có ba loại mệnh đề quan hệ

1.Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (restrictive relative clause)

-Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước, là bộ phận quan trọng của câu,nếu bỏ đi mệnh đề chính không có nghĩa rõ ràng.

Eg The girl who is wearing the blue dress is my sister.

The book which I borrowed from you is very interesting.

2.Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non- restrictive relative clause)

-Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước,là phần giải thích thêm, nếu bỏ đi mệnh đề chính vẫn còn nghĩa rõ ràng.

-Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định thường được ngăn với mệnh đề chính bởi các dấu phẩy.

Danh từ đứng trước thường là tên riêng hoặc trước các danh từ thường có các từ như: this, that, these, those, my, his her...đứng trước.

- Không được dùng that trong mệnh đề không xác định. Eg My father, who is 50 years old, is a doctor.

This girl, whom you met yesterday, is my daughter.

3.Mệnh đề quan hệ nối tiếp.

- Mệnh đề quan hệ nối tiếp dùng để giải thích cả một câu, trường hợp này chỉ dùng đại từ quan hệ which và dùng dấu phẩy để tách hai mệnh đề. Mệnh đề này luôn đứng ở cuối câu.

Eg He admires Mr Brown, which surprises me.

Mary tore Tom's letter, which made him sad.

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. language | B. accent | C . grammar | D. mistake |
| 2. A. bilingual | B. contribute | C. guarantee | D. admission |
| 3. A. translate | B. pronounce | C. persuade | D. borrow |
| 4. A. official | B. interview | C. adjective | D dominant |

5. A. certificate B. education C. derivative D. approximate
- I. 1- D 2- C 3- D 4- A 5- B

II. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only.

accent	bilingual	conversation	dialect	imitate
intonation	knowledge	look up	official	vocabulary

- The teacher has done a quick quiz to check the students' _____ of the English language.
- English has the largest with about 500,000 words and 300,000 technical terms.
- Paul speaks English with a strong French _____, doesn't he?
- Rising _____ describes how the voice rises at the end of a sentence.
- My friend is _____ because she speaks both English and Vietnamese fluently.
- You can quickly _____ a word's definition from the online dictionary.
- I think she is speaking a different English _____ as it has different words and grammar.
- English is the _____ language in this country and government must do its business in English.
- In my opinion, it's very difficult for an Englishman to _____ a real American accent.
- I had an interesting _____ with a native English speaker at the meeting this morning.

1. knowledge 2. vocabulary 3. accent 4. intonation 5. bilingual
6. look up 7. dialect 8. official 9. imitate 10. conversation

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

- I'm interested in the study on the _____ and differences between the two languages. SIMILAR
- Nhung can speak English much more _____ than her sister can. FLUENCY
- It's said that many English words have been _____ over the centuries. SIMPLE 4. Computers offer a much greater degree of _____ in the way work is organized. FLEXIBLE
- We are going to review the eight parts of _____ in SPEAK the next three lessons.
- His father has been working as a _____ of technical TRANSLATE texts for over ten years.
- Ivan can write almost like a native speaker, but his _____ is terrible. PRONOUNCE
- Your aunt is very _____ about English literature, isn't she? KNOW
- Since its _____ in 1945, the United Nations has played a dominant role in the development of international law. ESTABLISH
- Information related to _____ in English Language Teaching can be found in this book. OPEN

1. similarities 2. fluently 3. simplified 4. flexibility 5. speech
6. translator 7. pronunciation 8. knowledge 9. establishment 10. openness

IV. Complete the following conditional sentences type 2 using the correct form OF the verbs in brackets.

- If I (be) _____ weak in speaking English, I (practise) _____ speaking it more.
- If you (live) _____ in Australia, you (use) _____ English every day.

3. She (not speak) _____ fluently if she (not study) _____ at an international school.
4. Mr. Quang (send) _____ his son to a school in England if he (be) _____ richer.
5. If I (not understand) _____ the lesson, I (ask) _____ my teacher to explain it again.
6. I (tell) _____ you if I (know) _____ the meaning of this word.
7. If he (not be) _____ bilingual, he (not be) _____ able to join our conversation.
8. Which country you (choose) _____ to improve your English if you (have) chance, Phong?
9. I (buy) _____ an English dictionary if my parents (send) _____ me money.
10. If we (not have) _____ our English friends, we (not imitate) _____ their accent.

1. were/ would practice	6. would tell/ knew
2. lived/ would use	7. weren't/ wouldn't be
3. wouldn't speak/ didn't study	8. would you choose/ had
4. would send/ were	9. would buy/ sent
5. didn't understand/ would ask	10. didn't have/ wouldn't imitate

V. Combine the following sentences using an appropriate relative clause

1. This is the IELTS practice test book. I have told you about it.
.....
2. We have just moved to a new neighbourhood. There are a lot of English families there.
.....
3. Mrs. Nga has a friend. Her daughter is studying English in Australia.
.....
4. The English teacher is excellent. You met him at the meeting yesterday.
.....
5. I still remember the day. I first spoke to an English professor on that day.
.....
6. The man is a friend of my father. He helped me with my pronunciation.
.....
7. A student came late. I borrowed his English dictionary.
.....
8. The language is called Singlish. People speak it in Singapore.
.....
9. I recently went back to my school. I learned my first English words here thirty years ago.
.....
10. The lady is an interpreter. My mother has worked with her for a long time.
.....

V.

1. This is the IELTS practice test book which/that I have told you about/ about which I have told you.
2. We have just moved to a new neighbourhood where there are a lot of English families.
3. Mrs Nga has a friend whose daughter is studying English in Australia.
4. The English teacher who/ whom/ that you met at the meeting yesterday is excellent.
5. I still remember the day when I first spoke to an English professor.
6. The man who/ that help me with my pronunciation is a friend of my father.
7. The student whose English dictionary I borrowed came late.
8. The language which/ that people speak in Singapore is called Singlish.

9. I recently went back to my school where I learned my first English words thirty years ago.

10. The lady who/ whom/ that my mother has worked with for a long time is an interpreter/ with whom my mother has worked for a long time is an interpreter.

VI. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. The language that you learn to speak from birth is _language.
A. official B. first C. second D. foreign
2. There are many_____of English all over the world such as British English, American English and Indian English.
A. speakers B. terms C. dialogues D. varieties
3. It_____ is not easy to a foreign language without communicating with the native speakers regularly.
A. translate B. simplify c. master D. challenge
4. If you want to improve your speaking skill, you should attend the courses that are taught in a way.
A. traditional B. domestic
C. lexical D. communicative
5. Reading helps you learn vocabulary easily as you will_____new words without even realising it when you read.
A. pick up B. give up C. face up D. look up
6. The picture reminds him of the time ____ he studied in New York.
A. which B. when C. where D. why
7. Mike comes from a city_____is located in the southern part of England.
A. where B. who C. when D. that
8. The children_____ attend that English school receive good education.
A. who B. whom C. which D. whose
9. If I had more time I_____ a Business English course.
A. will take B. would take C. take D. took
10. They could understand our conversation if they_____some English.
A. knew B. would know C. will know D. Know

VI. 1. B 2.D 3. C 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. A

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each question.

Over the past 600 years, English has grown from a language of few speakers to become the dominant language of international communication. English as we know it today emerged around 1350, after having incorporated many elements of French that were introduced following the Norman invasion of 1066. Until the 1600s, English was, for the most part, spoken only in England and had not extended even as far as Wales, Scotland, or Ireland. However, during the course of the next two centuries, English began to spread around the globe as a result of exploration, trade (including slave trade), colonisation, and missionary work. Thus, small enclaves of English speakers became established and grew in various parts of the world. As these communities **proliferated**, English gradually became the primary language of international business, banking and diplomacy.

Currently, about 80 percent of the information stored on computer systems worldwide is English. Two-thirds of the world's science writing is in English, and English is the main language of technology, advertising, media, international airports, and air traffic controllers.

Today there are more than 700 million English users in the world, and over half of these are normative speakers, constituting the largest number of normative users than any other language in the world.

1. What is the main topic of this passage?

- A. The French influence on the English Language.
- B. The history of the English language.
- C. The expansion of English as an international language.
- D. The use of English for science and technology.

2. Approximately when did English begin to be used beyond England?

- A. In 1066
- B. Around 1350
- C. Before 1600
- D. After 1600

3. According to the passage, all of the following contributed to the spread of English around the world EXCEPT _____ .

- A. the slave trade
- B. the Norman invasion
- C. missionaries
- D. colonisation

4. The underlined word "proliferated" in the passage is closest in meaning to ____ .

- A. prospered
- B. organized
- C. disbanded
- D. expanded

5. It can be inferred from the passage that _____ .

- A. English first appeared more than a thousand years ago.
- B. England colonised different parts of the world in early 2nd millennium.
- C. English is taught in primary schools all over the world.
- D. English is not the language with the largest native speakers in the world.

1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D

VIII. Each sentence below contains an error. Underline it and write the correct answer in the space provided. Example:

0. My brother buys some English books and CDs last week. 0/ bought

1. I don't know the reason when she went to Australia instead 1 / _____ of Britain to study English.

2. If I were a native speaker of English, I will help you practise 2/ _____ speaking English every day.

3. I'd like you to meet my friend who you will be studying with 3/ _____ him next year.

4. We couldn't speak fluent English if we don't use it in 4/ _____ everyday conversations.

5. My sister is studying at a university that many American 5/ _____ and Australian professors are working.

1. **when -> why**

2. **will -> would**

3. **him -> x**

4. **don't -> didn't**

5. **that -> where**

IX. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. Mr. Binh uses English every day because he works with some Australians. If Mr. Binh _____

2. I received a letter this morning and it had good news.

The letter that _____ _ 3.

You don't have an English certificate, so you cannot enroll in this course.

You could _____ _ 4.

My mother is talking with an Englishwoman.

The woman with _____

5. I think you should read English papers to improve your reading skill.

If I _____ 1. If

Mr Binh didn't work with some Australians, he wouldn't use English every day.

2. The letter that I received this morning had good news

3. You could enroll in this course if you had an English certificate.

4. The woman with whom my mother is talking is/ comes from England/ is English.

5. If I were you, I would read English newspapers to improve the reading skill.

X. Use the ideas below to write a paragraph of around 100 words about why English is important in your daily life.

* A means to have access to worldwide information

* Recreation: read English books, listen to English songs, watch English movies, TV shows

* A useful instrument for travelling

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

English plays a very important role in my daily life. Firstly, English is a means for me to have access to worldwide information. When I need to search for data for my homework or projects, the information I find on the Internet is often in English. Secondly, it is about recreation. I enjoy reading books and comics in English, listening to English songs and watching English movies and TV shows. Last but not least, English is a useful instrument for traveling. With almost one billion English speakers in the world, it is easy for me to communicate with other people in different lands. In short, English is an essential part in my life.

TEST 1 – UNIT 9

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. massive B. immersion C. imitate D. variety
2. A. rusty B. punctual C. universal D. subject 3. A. office B. official
C. accent D. fluency

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

4. A. accent B. mistake C. global D. rusty 5. A. bilingual B. dialect
C. dominance D. official

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. It's an important part of your cultural identity to keep your _____ in speaking English.
A. vocabulary B. language C. accent D. skill
7. Much _____ comes through body language and gesture.
A. talk. B. exchange C. speech D. communication
8. Try to. _____ the meaning of words rather than going straight for your dictionary.
A. judge B. guess C. decide D. expect
9. Reading is the best way to your vocabulary in any language.
A. improve _ B. increase C. raise D. put up
10. He is not exactly rich but he certainly earns enough to .
A. get through B. get by C. get on D. get up
11. One way of increasing your speed of comprehension is to learn all your vocabulary without the use of your own
A. first language B. technical language C. business language D. official business
12. If I didn't have exams next week, I _____ camping with you this weekend.
A. will go B. will have gone C. would have gone D. would go 13. If she _____ rich, she would travel around the world.
A. would B. is C. has been D. were
14. India is the country _____ he spent the early years of his life.
A. at which _ B. on which C. that D. where
15. The girls and flowers _____ he painted were vivid.
A. who B. that C. whose D. which

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word/phrase from the box. There are some extra words.

collocations	get by know	look up say	pick up use
come across			

When you (16)_____ a new English word or phrase, make a note of it! (17)_____ the meaning in the dictionary, making sure you are aware of any grammatical information. For instance, if you are looking for the meaning of a verb, check to see if the verb can be used in a passive form, if it is followed by any particular preposition, and so on. Check also for the pronunciation and (18)_____ of a word. Is it particularly formal or informal, or used in certain word (19)_____ ? For example we (20)_____ "do housework", but "make an effort".

V) Complete the second sentence with the conditional sentence based on the facts given.

21. We have languages. We use them for communication.
If we didn't _____ . 22.
We have languages. We can leave knowledge to our younger generations.
If we didn't _____ .
23. We have senses. They allow us to learn languages.

If we didn't _____, 24.
 Our sense of sight allows us to read the written language.
 If we didn't _____ .
 25. Big companies have logos so that their goods can be recognized in every nation.
 If there weren't _____ .

Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

When I first started learning English ten years ago, I could hardly (26)_____ a word - "hello", "good bye", "thank you" was just about it! I went to classes two evenings a week and I was surprised at how quickly I (27)_____ progress. (28)_____ the course we learned lots of vocabulary and studied grammar rules. (29)_____ thing I enjoyed most was being able to practise speaking with the other students in my class.

After two years I went to England to a (30)_____ school. It was in Cambridge. I did a (31)_____ course at a very good school and I stayed with a local family. It was a fantastic experience and I (32)_____ up a lot of things from speaking with my host family and with other students from (33) _____ the world. I really improved my pronunciation as well. When I got back (34) _____ my home town, I was so much more confident. I (35) _____ actually hold a conversation with my teacher in English.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 26. A. talk | B. speak | C. say | D. tell |
| 27. A. do | B. make | C. did | D. made |
| 28. A. During | B. After | C. Before | D. While |
| 29. A. That | B. A | C. The | D. Those |
| 30. A. science | B. language | C. art | D. finance |
| 31. A. Three-weeks | B. third-week | C. threes-week | D. three-week |
| 32. A. picked | B. looked | D. got | D. stood |
| 33. A. all | B. over | C. over all | D. all over |
| 34. A. the | B. to | C. in | D. on |
| 35. A. had to | B. used | C. could | D. would |

VII-Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, c or D for each question.

The Importance of English in Today's World

English was originally the language of England, and soon it has become the primary or secondary language of many former British colonies such as the United States, Canada, Australia, and India. Nowadays, it is the most international language in the world. There are several factors that make the English language essential to communication in our current time. First of all, it is the most common foreign language. This means that two people who come from different countries (for example, a Mexican and a Swede) usually use English as a common language to communicate. English is also essential to the field of education. In many countries, children are taught and encouraged to learn English as a second language. At the university level, students in many countries study almost all their subjects in English in order to make the material more accessible to international students. On the Internet, the majority of websites are written and created in English. Even sites in other languages often give you the option to translate the site. It is the primary language of the press: more newspapers and books are written in English than in any other language, and no matter where in the world you are, you will find some of these books and newspapers available.

Although many people think that it is very difficult and confusing, English is actually the easiest language of the world to learn because there are so many resources available. As soon as you decide you want to learn, there are thousands of resources on the Internet and in bookstores. With good understanding and communication in English, you can travel around the globe. Because it is the international language for foreigners, it is easy to get assistance and help in

every part of the world. You can test it by online travel. Any travel booking site you can find will have English as a booking option.

36. When two people having different mother tongues meet each other, they will use_____

- A. their own mother tongues to communicate
- B. English as a means of communication
- C. the third language to communicate
- D. a second language as a means of communication

37. The study material at universities is often written in English so that_____

- A. all international students can follow it
- B. scientists can understand it easily
- C. it is the dominant language in England
- D. all children from many countries understand English

38. All of the following about the role of English on the Internet are true EXCEPT that _____

- A. most websites are written in English
- B. most programmers created websites in English
- C. websites offer you the option in other languages
- D. most websites have English version

39. English is believed by many to be the easiest language of the world to learn because

- A. you can decide you want to learn English
- B. there are thousands of bookstores available
- C. it is not very difficult and confusing
- D. it is easy to find resources to learn English

40. We can infer from the passage that _____ .

- A. English makes you travel around the globe
- B. you can use English to travel online
- C. international tourists must know English
- D. it is easy to get help to learn English all over the world.

VIII. Complete the conversation about the way to improve speaking skills, using the responses (A-G) given. There are two extra ones.

- A. It's much useful to learn new words in this way.
- B. First, you should slow down your speaking speed.
- C. Writing is one way of producing language.
- D. You should practise speaking English whenever you can.
- E. You can make others understand you well.
- F. We also need to keep in mind the fact that communication is a two-way process.
- G. In fact, it's a good way to limit our mistakes.

Nick: Phong, congratulations! You got good marks for the grammar test.

Phong: Thank you. I can understand the grammar and read well, but speaking is rather difficult. **Nick:**

(41)_____

Phong: Why should I do so?

Nick: Because you can speak more slowly and clearly. (42)

_____ **Phong:**

And we can give ourselves time to think.

TV/cA:

(43) _____

When you learn a new word, try to memorize a couple of sentences that contain it.

Phong: We should use new words in sentences?

Nick:

(44) _____

Then don't forget to listen to what others are saying. When speaking in a foreign language, you might be so focused on what you are saying and whether it's correct or not, that you forget to listen to what others are saying.

Phong: Anything else, Nick?

Nick: The most important thing is to keep active all the time. (45)

Phong: I think I try to make my passive knowledge become active. Thanks a lot, Nick.

IX) Use the words or phrases given to write meaningful sentences.

46. English/ play/ important role/ everyday life.

—

—

47. English/ widely used/ international communication/ everyday work.

—

—

48. Students/ want/ go abroad/ education/ have to/ learn/ English well.

—

—

49. It/ language/ science/ and/ you/ need/ know English/ good/ science.

—

—

50. English/ main language/ instruction/ international students/ universities/ colleges.

—

KEY

I+II. 1D 2C 3B 4B 5A

III. 6C 7D 8B 9A 10D 11A 12D 13D 14D 15B

- IV. 16. come across 17. look up 18. use 19. collocations 20. say V.
 21. If we didn't have any languages, we couldn't communicate/ communication would be impossible.
 22. If we didn't have any languages, we couldn't leave knowledge to our younger generations.
 23. If we didn't have senses, we couldn't learn languages.
 24. If we didn't have our senses of sight, we couldn't read languages. 25. If there weren't logos for big companies, their goods couldn't be recognized in every nation.
 VI. 26C 27D 28A 29C 30B 31D 32A 33D 34B
 35C
 VII. 36B 37A 38C 39D 40C VIII. 41B 42E 43G 44^a 45D
 IX.
 46. English plays an important role in our everyday life.
 47. English is widely used in international communication for everyday work.
 48. Students who want to go abroad for education will have to learn English well.
 49. It is the language of science, and you need to know English to be good at science.
 50. English is the main language of instruction for international students in universities and colleges.

TEST 2 (UNIT 9)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. imitate B. translate C. phrase D. language
2. A. variety B. bilingual C. derivative D. dialect
3. A. massive B. immersion C. establish D. rusty

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

4. A. punctual B. flexible C. openness D. specific
5. A. establishment B. derivative C. population D. simplicity

III. Choose the best answer A, B, c or D to complete the sentences.

6. Trying to use a _____ dictionary less and switching to a monolingual one can help you stop translating in your head when you are speaking or listening.
 A. biannual B. bicentenary C. bi-monthly D. bilingual
7. Are you someone who can read and write well in English but cannot speak _____?
 A. fluent B. fluently C. fluency D. a fluency
8. In a _____ class, this is a great opportunity to learn about different customs and traditions around the world.
 A. multilingual B. multi-disciplinary C. multi-dimensional D. multinational
9. If you get _____ when speaking, take two deep breaths before you say something.
 A. annoyed B. nervous C. pleased D. unwilling
10. No one ever improves pronunciation and _____ by watching someone else's shape of the mouth! You improve English speaking by speaking, not watching.
 A. rhythm B. tone C. accent D. sounds
11. If I _____ taller, I _____ better at basketball.
 A. am — will be B. were — would have been
 C. be — would be D. were — might be
12. If you _____ in my position, what would you do?
 A. are B. will be C. were D. would be

13. There was a storm _____ I had never experienced before.

- A. such as B. as which C. which D. for which

14. Children always want to know the reason _____ things are as they are.

- A. why B. whom C. which D. who

15. Is the first of March the day _____ the astronaut will come and give a speech at our school?

- A. that B. what C. which D. when

IV. Fill in each gap in the passage with ONE suitable word.

Read something that (16) _____ you. It could be a newspaper, a novel, a magazine, or even an English graded reader (a simplified book). Working page by page, (17) _____ the words or phrases that you don't know; (18) _____ up only those that are important for understanding, or which are repeated. (19) _____ a good dictionary, and (20) _____ a note in your English vocabulary notebook.

V. Combine each pair of sentences to make a complete sentence, using a suitable relative pronoun.

21. The simplest definition of language is that "language is the means of communication". It is widely accepted.

.....
.....
.....

22. There are about one billion people. They use English as the lingua franca of international communication.

.....
.....

..... 23. Differences between languages can cause some problems to learners.
Differences between languages are explained in course books.

.....
.....

..... 24. A great number of people speak English as a foreign language. Their native language is not English.

.....
.....
.....

25. English has been regarded as a lingua franca. It enjoys more universality than any other language.

.....
.....
.....

VI) Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

English is the (26) _____ important in the world today. A very large (27) _____ of people understand and use English in many (28) _____ of the world.

Indeed English IS a very useful language. If we (29)_____ English we can go to any place or country we like. We shall not find it hard to (30)_____ people understand what we want to say.

English also helps us to learn all kinds of subjects. Hundreds of books are (31)_____ in English every day in many countries to teach people many useful things. (32)_____ English language has, therefore, helped to spread ideas and knowledge to all the corners of the world. There is no subject that cannot be (33)_____ in English.

As English is used so much everywhere in the world, it has helped to make the countries in the world more (34)_____. The leaders of the world use English to understand one another. The English language has also helped to spread better understanding and friendship among countries of the world.

Lastly, a person who knows English is respected by people. It is for all these (35)_____ that I want to learn English.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 26. A. most | B. mostly | c. chiefly | D. best |
| 27. A. few | B. deal | c. amount | D. number |
| 28. A. countries | B. places | c. sites | D. scenes |
| 29. A. realize | B. say | c. speak | D. tell |
| 30. A. get | B. let | c. persuade | D. make |
| 31. A. published | B. wrote | c. print | D. make |
| 32. A. A | B. An | c. That | D. The |
| 33. A. recognized | B. realized | c. known | D. taught |
| 34. A. friend | B. friendly | c. friendship | D. friendliness |
| 35. A. reasons. | B. causes | c. effects | D. results |

VII-Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Every year, students in many countries learn English. Some of these students are young children. Others are teenagers. Many are adults. Some learn at school, others study by themselves. A few learn English just by hearing the language in films, on television, in the office or among their friends. But not many are lucky enough to do that. Most people must work hard to learn another language.

Many boys and girls learn English at school because it is one of their subjects. They study their own language, mathematics, and English. In England, America, or Australia, many boys and girls study their native language, which is English, mathematics, and another language, perhaps French, or German or Spanish.

Many adults learn English because it is useful for their work. Teenagers often learn English for their higher studies, because some of their books are in English at college or university. Others learn English because they want to read newspapers or magazines in English.

36. According to the writer_____.
- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| A. only adults learn English | B. no children like to learn English | D. English is popular all over the world |
| C. English is useful only for teenagers | | |
37. Most people learn English by _____.
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A. watching videos only | B. working hard on their lessons |
| C. hearing the language in the office | D. talking with foreigners |
38. Many boys and girls learn English because _
- | | |
|--|---|
| A. it is included in their study courses | B. English can give them a job |
| C. they are forced to learn it | D. they have to study their own languages |

39. In America or Australia many school children study_____.

- A. English as a foreign language
- B. English and mathematics only

c. such foreign languages as French, German, and Spanish

D. their own language and no foreign language

40. Many adults learn English because

- A. English is spoken in their office
- C. most of their books are in English

B. they want to go abroad

D. it helps them in their work

VIII-Complete the conversation about the way to improve speaking skills, using the responses (A-G) given. There are two extra ones.

- A. Choose a word you would like to work on and practise it in different sentences.
- B. Imitate the actors and have fun with it.
- C. You can use it to record yourself speaking then listen back.
- D. I think you should be confident and speak as often as possible as you can.
- E. We should do interesting activities in English, and using it to talk about things we enjoy will make practising a positive experience.
- F. It is a powerful tool for learning languages.
- G. This is a great way to practise pronunciation because you only need to concentrate on your voice.

Amelia: The speaking contest in our school is coming. Are you well-prepared for it?

Mai: Yes, but I try to speak more fluently and effectively in English. Can you help me?

Amelia: _____ Certainly. (41)

_____. Don't be shy to make mistakes!

Mai: Practice is the perfect way, but the matter is that how we practise it correctly.

Amelia: I agree with you. Your smartphone is very useful. (42)_____

Mai: Really? What can we do with it?

Amelia: _____ (43)

_____ Do you often watch films in English?

Mai: Yes. I think it's very useful to our speaking skill.

Amelia: We can pay attention to new vocabulary and pronunciation in films.

(44)_____

Mai: Yes, I think taking part in the English Speaking Club in our school is fantastic.

Amelia: _____ Right.

(45)_____

Mai: Thanks a lot. I'll try my best at the coming contest.
Amelia: Good luck to you, Mai.

IX-Use the words or phrases given to write meaningful sentences.

46. English/ most spoken official language/ world.

47. It/ primary language/ used/ international affairs.

48. English/ indisputably/ primary language/ global trade/ commerce.

49. English/ dominant language/ digital age.

50. In universities/ colleges/ English-speaking countries/ primary language/ instruction/ English.

KEY

I+II. 1A 2C 3B 4D 5C

III. 6D 7B 8D 9B 10C 11D 12C 13C 14A 15D

IV. 16. interests 17. underline 18. look 19. use 20. make

V.

21. The simplest definition of language which is widely accepted is that language is the means of communication.

22. There are about one billion people who use English as the lingua franca of international communication.

23. Differences between languages which are explained in course books can cause some problems to learners.

24. A great number of people whose native language is not English speak E as a foreign language.

25. E which has been regarded as a lingua franca enjoys more universality than any other languages.

VI. 26A 27D 28A 29C 30D 31A 32D 33D 34B 35A

VII. 36D 37B 38A 39C 40D

VIII. 41D 42F 43C 44B 45E

IX.

46. E is the most spoken official language in the world.

47. It is the primary language used in international affairs.

48. E is indisputable the primary language of global trade and commerce.

49. E is the dominant language in the digital age.

50. In universities and colleges in the E speaking countries, the primary language of instruction is E.

SPACE TRAVEL (UNIT 10)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

astronaut (n)	/'æstrɒnɔ:t/	phi hành gia	astronomy (n)	/ə'strɒnəmi/	thiên văn học
attach (v)	/ə'tætʃ/	buộc, gài	float (v)	/fləʊt/	trôi (trong không gian)
habitable (adj)	/'hæbɪtəbl/	có đủ điều kiện cho sự sống	International Space Station (ISS) (n)	/,ɪntə'næʃnəl speɪs 'steɪʃn/	Trạm vũ trụ quốc tế ISS
galaxy (n)	/'gæləksi/	thiên hà	land (v)	/lənd/	hạ cánh
launch (v, n)	/lɔ:ntʃ/	phóng	meteorite (n)	/'mi:tɪərəɪt/	thiên thạch
microgravity (n)	/ 'maɪkrəʊ 'grævəti/	tình trạng g không trọng lực	mission (n)	/'mɪʃn/	chuyến đi, nhiệm vụ
operate (v)	/'ɒpəreɪt/	vận hành	orbit (v, n)	/'ɔ:bɪt/	xoay quanh, đi theo quỹ đạo
parabolic flight (n)	/,pærə'bɒlɪk flaɪt/	chuyến bay tạo môi trường không trọng lực	rocket (n)	/'rɒkɪt/	tên lửa
rinseless (adj)	/rɪnsles/	không cần xả nước	satellite (n)	/'sætəlaɪt/	vệ tinh
space tourism (n)	/speɪs 'tʊərɪzəm/	ngành du lịch vũ trụ	spacecraft (n)	/'speɪskrɑ:ft/	tàu vũ trụ
spaceline (n)	/'speɪslaɪn/	hãng hàng không vũ trụ	spacesuit (n)	/'speɪssu:t/	trang phục du hành vũ trụ
spacewalk (n)	/'speɪswɔ:k/	chuyến đi bộ trong không gian	telescope (n)	/'telɪskəʊp/	kính thiên văn
universe (n)	/'ju:nɪvɜ:s/	vũ trụ			

II. Grammar

- Review : Past Simple and Past Perfect

- Defining relative clause

III. Phonetics: Continuing of finishing tones

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern:

1. A. universe B. satellite C. experience D. meteorite
2. A. spacewalk B. trainee C. object D. private
3. A. impressive B. commercial C. profession D. altitude
4. A. parabolic B. astronomy C. experiment D. collaborate
5. descend B. explore C. surface D. approach

II. Insert the rising or falling arrows into the boxes to show the continuing or finishing tones :

1. The eight planets in the solar system are Mercury ☐, Venus ☐, the Earth ☐, Mars ☐, Jupiter ☐, Saturn ☐, Uranus ☐ and Neptune ☐.
2. The space stations which have operated are Salyut ☐, Skylab ☐, and the ISS ☐.
3. There are five laboratory modules on the ISS : two Russian Mini Research Modules ☐, the US lab Destiny ☐, the European Columbus ☐, and the Japanese Kibo ☐.
4. China has launched its satellite Dong Fang Hong ☐, its manned spacecraft Shenzhou ☐, and its space lab Tiangong ☐.
5. John Glenn, the first American in orbit ☐ and the oldest astronaut ☐, was a pilot ☐, an engineer ☐, an astronaut ☐, and a politician ☐.

III. Match the words in the left column to the definitions in the right column :

<i>Words</i>	<i>Definitions</i>
1. telescope	A. A piece of rock or metal that has fallen to the earth's surface from outer space.
2. spacecraft	B. a large cylinder-shaped object that moves very fast by forcing out burning gases, used for space travel or as a weapon.
3. satellite	C. A person who travels into space from Russia.
4. meteorite	D. A scientist who studies the universe and objects existing naturally in space.
5. planet	E. A system of millions or billions of stars, together with gas and dust, held together by
6. cosmonaut	
7. universe	
8. rocket	
9. galaxy	
10. astronomer	

	gravitational attraction. F. A large round object in space that moves around a star (such as the sun) and receives light from it. G. An optical instrument designed to make distant objects appear nearer. H. An artificial body placed in orbit around the earth or another planet in order to collect information or for communication. I. The whole of space and anything in it, including the Earth, the planets and the stars. J. A manned or unmanned vehicle designed to orbit the earth or travel to celestial objects for the purpose of research, exploration, etc.
--	--

IV. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only :

astronaut	astronomy	comet	float	launch
microgravity	mission	operate	orbit	spacesuit

- The _____ of Apollo 11 was to land two men on the lunar surface and return them safely to Earth.
- Was Vietnam's first telecom satellite *Vinasat-1* put into _____ on April 18th, 2008 ?
- Sally Ride became the first American woman _____ to fly in space in 1983 when she was 32 years old.
- In _____, astronauts can move things that weigh hundreds of pounds with just the tips of their fingers.
- Quang is interested in _____. He can spend hours studying the sun, moon, stars and planets.
- The tail of a _____ can extend over 84 million miles, nearly the distance between the Earth and the sun.
- The _____ of Apollo 13 was delayed from March 12th to April 11th, 1970 to give to give the new prime crew more time to train.
- People _____ in space because there is no gravity to pull them towards anything.
- This _____ was worn by astronaut Neil Amstrong, the first human to set foot on the Moon.
- The mission not only taught NASA about Venus, but also how to _____ a spacecraft far from Earth.

V. Fill in each blank in the sentences with the correct expression from the box, using the correct word form :

everything under the sun	live on another planet	come back down to earth
once in a blue moon	out of this world	over the moon
the sky's the limit		reach for the stars

1. I _____ on my first Monday back to school after my holiday in Nha Trang.
2. "That's the coolest thing I've ever seen. It's really _____".
3. For people who work hard at this company, _____.
4. Dan: Do you like to drink tea? Ben: I love coffee, but I only drink tea _____.
5. She wasn't listening to me at all. Sometimes I think she's _____.
6. Joan was _____ when she found out she was going to be a grandmother.
7. If you _____, all of your dreams will come true.
8. She's very intelligent and knowledgeable. She can talk about _____.

VI. Complete the text with the words in the box:

mission control	atmosphere	orbit	mission
crew	Station	satellite	astronauts

Space disasters

On January 28 1986 the space shuttle challenger was launched with a (1) _____ of seven on board. Its (2) _____ was to carry a (3) _____ that would orbit the Earth. But just 73 seconds after leaving the ground, it lost contact with (4) _____ and exploded, killing all seven (5) _____.

On February 1, 2003, the space shuttle Columbia broke into small pieces as it re-entered the Earth's (6) _____. It was returning from the International Space (7) _____, which is in (8) _____ around the Earth.

VII. Put the verbs in brackets in the past simple tense or past perfect tense :

1. Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin (collect) _____ some moon dust samples before they (return) _____ to Earth.
2. By the time Yang Liwei (become) _____ the first person sent into space by the Chinese Space Program in 2003, NASA already (send) _____ over 100 people.
3. After the spaceship *Soyuz 37* (be) _____ in orbit around the Earth, Pham Tuan and Viktor Gorbalko (conduct) _____ some experiments.
4. When we (arrive) _____ in Kennedy Space Center, the space shuttle already (launch) _____ into space.
5. Dennis Tito already (complete) _____ 900 hours of training by the time he (fly) _____ into space in 2001.

VIII. One of the Past Simple verbs in each sentence below should be in the Past Perfect or Past Perfect Continuous. Correct the verb, and you may need to change the word order :

1. It was obvious that she cried because her eyes were red.

2. As soon as I saw his sister, I realized that we met before.

3.

The passengers were very frustrated by the time someone finally made an announcement. They waited for several hours.

4. Everyone was amazed by his appearance – they never saw anyone with dyed blue hair before.

5. When I looked out of the window in the morning, everywhere was wet – it rained all night.

6. Two hours before his speech, the politician still didn't decide what to say.

IX. Choose the best answer in the brackets to complete the following sentences :

1. The student (who/ whom/ x) was selected to join the space program is my brother's friend.
2. They showed me the place (when/ which/ x) the spaceship landed last week.
3. David introduced me to the woman (whom/ whose/ x) husband is working for NASA.
4. The astronomer (which/ whose/ x) you want to meet is going to present a paper at the conference next Friday.
5. The twenty-ninth of May is the day (that/ which/ x) our astronauts will be returning home.
6. The man with (who/ whom/ x) Mr. Khoa is talking has flown into space three times.
7. The satellite (where/ that/ x) was launched into space yesterday belongs to Vietnam.
8. The space age began in 1957 (when/ which/ x) the Soviet Union launched Sputnik 1, the world's first man-made satellite.
9. An astronaut is a person (whom/ that/ x) travels in a spacecraft into outer space.
10. The book (who/ where/ x) I'm reading is about the history of space exploration.

X. Combine each pair of sentences into one, using defining relative clauses and the prompts provided :

1. Would you tell me the reasons ? Astronauts go on spacewalks for those reasons.

→ Would you tell me _____

2. Fuglesang said he was greatly impressed by the Earth's beauty. It was quite strange to him.

→ Fuglesang said he _____

3. During Apollo 14's lunar mission, Alan Shepard hit two golf balls. They flew "miles and miles"

→ During Apollo 14's lunar mission, Alan Shepard _____

4. Sharman's mission to the Mir Space Station lasted 8 days. She conducted a number of experiments during that time.

→ Sharman's mission to the Mir Space Station _____

5.

The speech announced that NASA was developing a reusable launch vehicle – the space shuttle. The speech was made by U.S President Richard Nixon in 1972.

→ The speech _____

6. We are meeting an astronomer tonight. This astronomer has discovered three Earth-like planets.

→ The astronomer _____

7. Dennis Tito became the first space tourist in 2001. Anousheh Ansari travelled into space as a tourist in 2006.

→ When Anousheh Ansari _____

8. I'm reading an article. The article is about NASA's plan to return humans to the moon.

→ I'm reading _____

9.

Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin planted an American flag on the moon. They spoke to President Richard Nixon after that.

→ Before Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin _____

10. Last week they visited a museum. The first artificial satellite is on display there.

→ Last week they _____

XI. Choose the correct option A, B, C or D to complete the sentences :

1. The first _____ was done by Alexei Leonov, a Russian cosmonaut on March 18th, 1965. It was 10 minutes long.

A. spacesuit B. spacewalk C. spaceship D. spaceward.

2. The Milky Way is just a _____ in the universe and it contains our Solar System,

A. planet B. comet C. meteorite D. galaxy

3. Christer Fulgesang said he enjoyed floating around in the _____ environment.

A. homesick B. heavy C. weightless D. quiet

4. NASA is now working hard to _____ whether there is life on Mars.

A. discover B. collect C. experience D. accept

5. The closest potentially _____ planet ever found has been spotted by Australian scientists, and it's just 14 light-years away.

A. foreseeable B. habitable C. transferable D. workable

6. As soon as the spacecraft _____ into space, the crew started to observe the sun.

A. travelled B. was travelling C. has travelled D. had travelled

7. The launch of the Space Shuttle Endeavour _____ broadcast live this morning.

A. was B. had been C. has been D. was being

8. Do you want to meet my colleague _____ son is training to be an astronaut ?

A. that B. whom C. who D. x

9. The mission _____ they are talking about plans to send humans to Mars by 2030.

A. who B. when C. where D. x

10. The Astronauts Memorial Foundation honours all American astronauts _____ have lost their lives while on mission or in training.

A. which

B. who

C. whom

D. x

XII. Fill in the blank with a suitable word to complete the following passage :

Space Exploration is the investigation of the universe beyond Earth's atmosphere by (1) _____ of manned or unmanned spacecraft. Despite the technological advancements achieved in the past, space exploration was only (2) _____ until the 20th century. The first successful orbital launch was made by the Soviet Union 1957 which was called "Sputnik". When the topic "SPACE OPERATION" is put (3) _____ the table, a question has often been asked: "Why should we spend money on NASA while there are so (4) _____ problems here on Earth?". However, this might be partially wrong exploring the unknown may help us progress.

The advantages of space exploration include the materials (5) _____ can be obtained from outer space. For instance, asteroids have iron and nickel which could be utilized to satisfy the (6) _____ for metal. Therefore, numerous commercial companies have invested in developing technology for asteroid mining. Several comets and asteroid (7) _____ solid water in them. This water can be used for astronauts and scientists in space stations. The water can also be broken down to hydrogen which can be used as (8) _____ for the rockets. Scientists also believed that dinosaurs disappeared because they couldn't go to (9) _____ planet. Sooner or later a killer comet will again cross Earth's path , threatening all life. Fortunately, (10) _____ we have knowledge about comets and space science, we will be able to survive.

XIII. Read the following passage and choose the best answer for each question:

Where will you go on your next vacation? Disneyland? Sea World? Outer space?

That's right; tourists are now paying big bucks to travel into space with astronauts! The first space tourist was Dennis Tito, an American businessman. In 2001, he paid about \$20 million to ride on a Russian rocket to the International Space Station. The Space Station circles 220 miles above Earth. Tito stayed on the station for a week, hanging out with astronauts and eating space food.

The latest space tourist was Anousheh Ansari, an Iranian-born woman from the United States who went to the Space Station in mid-September 2006.

How safe is space travel? Apart from the risk of crashing, space tourists have some special things to worry about. Earth's atmosphere protects us from dangerous radiation from the sun. Space travelers are exposed to more of the sun's rays. But for tourists spending only a few days or weeks in space, the radiation probably isn't harmful.

A bigger problem might be space sickness. Without Earth's gravity to hold them down, visitors to the Space Station float around inside the craft. It may look like fun on TV, but it can make first-time space travelers dizzy and sick. Luckily, the sickness usually wears off quickly. Then space tourists can enjoy their trip - and the amazing view of Earth.

1. Traveling to space _____

A. will be available to everyone

B. is not expensive

C. will be limited to the very wealthy

D. will be limited to the very poor

2. While in outer space, it's likely that people will _____

- XIV. Use the ideas below to write a paragraph of around 100 words about the benefits of space exploration:**

- [illegible]

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern:

- II. Insert the rising or falling arrows into the boxes to show the continuing or finishing tones :**

1. The eight planets in the solar system are Mercury ☐, Venus ☐, the Earth ☐, Mars ☐, Jupiter ☐, Saturn ☐, Uranus ☐ and Neptune ☐.
2. The space stations which have operated are Salyut ☐, Skylab ☐, and the ISS ☐.
3. There are five laboratory modules on the ISS : two Russian Mini Research Modules ☐, the US lab Destiny ☐, the European Columbus ☐, and the Japanese Kibo ☐.
4. China has launched its satellite Dong Fang Hong ☐, its manned spacecraft Shenzhou ☐, and its space lab Tiangong ☐.
5. John Glenn, the first American in orbit ☐ and the oldest astronaut ☐, was a pilot ☐, an engineer ☐, an astronaut ☐, and a politician ☐.



III. Match the words in the left column to the definitions in the right column :

<i>Words</i>	<i>Definitions</i>
--------------	--------------------

1. telescope (G)	A. A piece of rock or metal that has fallen to the earth's surface from outer space.
2. spacecraft (J)	B. a large cylinder-shaped object that moves very fast by forcing out burning gases, used for space travel or as a weapon.
3. satellite (H)	C. A person who travels into space from Russia.
4. meteorite (A)	D. A scientist who studies the universe and objects existing naturally in space.
5. planet (F)	E. A system of millions or billions of stars, together with gas and dust, held together by gravitational attraction.
6. cosmonaut (C)	F. A large round object in space that moves around a star (such as the sun) and receives light from it.
7. universe (I)	G. An optical instrument designed to make distant objects appear nearer.
8. rocket (B)	H. An artificial body placed in orbit around the earth or another planet in order to collect information or for communication.
9. galaxy (E)	I. The whole of space and anything in it, including the Earth, the planets and the stars.
10. astronomer (D)	J. A manned or unmanned vehicle designed to orbit the earth or travel to celestial objects for the purpose of research, exploration, etc.

IV. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only :

astronaut (3)	astronomy (5)	comet (6)	float (8)	launch (7)
microgravity (4)	mission (1)	operate (10)	orbit (2)	spacesuit (9)

- The _____ of Apollo 11 was to land two men on the lunar surface and return them safely to Earth.
- Was Vietnam's first telecom satellite *Vinasat-1* put into _____ on April 18th, 2008 ?
- Sally Ride became the first American woman _____ to fly in space in 1983 when she was 32 years old.
- In _____, astronauts can move things that weigh hundreds of pounds with just the tips of their fingers.
- Quang is interested in _____. He can spend hours studying the sun, moon, stars and planets.
- The tail of a _____ can extend over 84 million miles, nearly the distance between the Earth and the sun.
- The _____ of Apollo 13 was delayed from March 12th to April 11th, 1970 to give to give the new prime crew more time to train.
- People _____ in space because there is no gravity to pull them towards anything.

9. This _____ was worn by astronaut Neil Amstrong, the first human to set foot on the Moon.
10. The mission not only taught NASA about Venus, but also how to _____ a spacecraft far from Earth.

V. Fill in each blank in the sentences with the correct expression from the box, using the correct word form :

everything under the sun	live on another planet	come back down to earth
once in a blue moon	out of this world	over the moon
the sky's the limit		reach for the stars

1. I _____ on my first Monday back to school after my holiday in Nha Trang. (came back down to earth)
2. «That's the coolest thing I've ever seen. It's really _____. » (out of this world)
3. For people who work hard at this company, _____. (the sky's the limit)
4. Dan: Do you like to drink tea? Ben: I love coffee, but I only drink tea _____. (once in a blue moon)
5. She wasn't listening to me at all. Sometimes I think she's _____. (living on another planet)
6. Joan was _____ when she found out she was going to be a grandmother. (over the moon)
7. If you _____, all of your dreams will come true. (reach for the stars)
8. She's very intelligent and knowledgeable. She can talk about _____. (everything under the sun)

VI. Complete the text with the words in the box:

mission control (4)	atmosphere (6)	orbit (8)	mission (2)
crew (1)	Station (7)	satellite (3)	astronauts (5)

Space disasters

On January 28 1986 the space shuttle challenger was launched with a (1) _____ of seven on board. Its (2) _____ was to carry a (3) _____ that would orbit the Earth. But just 73 seconds after leaving the ground, it lost contact with (4) _____ and exploded, killing all seven (5) _____.

On February 1, 2003, the space shuttle Columbia broke into small pieces as it re-entered the Earth's (6) _____. It was returning from the International Space (7) _____, which is in (8) _____ around the Earth.

VII. Put the verbs in brackets in the past simple tense or past perfect tense :

1. Neil Amstrong and Buzz Aldrin (collect) had collected _____ some moon dust samples before they (return) returned _____ to Earth.

2. By the time Yang Liwei (become) became _____ the first person sent into space by the Chinese Space Program in 2003, NASA already (send) had already sent _____ over 100 people.
3. After the spaceship *Soyuz 37* (be) had been _____ in orbit around the Earth, Pham Tuan and Viktor Gorbatko (conduct) conducted _____ some experiments.
4. When we (arrive) arrived _____ in Kennedy Space Center, the space shuttle already (launch) had already launched _____ into space.
5. Dennis Tito already (complete) had already completed _____ 900 hours of training by the time he (fly) flew _____ into space in 2001.

VIII. One of the Past Simple verbs in each sentence below should be in the Past Perfect or Past Perfect Continuous. Correct the verb, and you may need to change the word order :

1. It was obvious that she cried because her eyes were red.
_____ had been crying _____
2. As soon as I saw his sister, I realized that we met before.
_____ had met _____
3. The passengers were very frustrated by the time someone finally made an announcement. They waited for several hours.
_____ had been waiting _____
4. Everyone was amazed by his appearance – they never saw anyone with dyed blue hair before.
_____ had never seen _____
5. When I looked out of the window in the morning, everywhere was wet – it rained all night.
_____ had been raining _____
6. Two hours before his speech, the politician still didn't decide what to say.
_____ hadn't decided _____

IX. Choose the best answer in the brackets to complete the following sentences :

1. The student (**who**/ whom/ x) was selected to join the space program is my brother's friend.
2. They showed me the place (when/ which/ **x**) the spaceship landed last week.
3. David introduced me to the woman (whom/ **whose**/ x) husband is working for NASA.
4. The astronomer (which/ whose/ **x**) you want to meet is going to present a paper at the conference next Friday.
5. The twenty-ninth of May is the day (that/ which/ **x**) our astronauts will be returning home.
6. The man with (who/ **whom**/ x) Mr. Khoa is talking has flown into space three times.
7. The satellite (where/ **that**/ x) was launched into space yesterday belongs to Vietnam.
8. The space age began in 1957 (**when**/ which/ x) the Soviet Union launched Sputnik 1, the world's first man-made satellite.
9. An astronaut is a person (whom/ **that**/x) travels in a spacecraft into outer space.
10. The book (who/ where/ **x**) I'm reading is about the history of space exploration.

X. Combine each pair of sentences into one, using defining relative clauses and the prompts provided :

1. Would you tell me the reasons ? Astronauts go on spacewalks for those reasons.
→ Would you tell me the reasons why astronauts go on spacewalks ?
2. Fuglesang said he was greatly impressed by the Earth's beauty. It was quite strange to him.
→ Fuglesang said he was greatly impressed by the Earth's beauty which was quite strange to him.
3. During Apollo 14's lunar mission, Alan Shepard hit two golf balls. They flew "miles and miles"
→ During Apollo 14's lunar mission, Alan Shepard hit two golf balls which flew "miles and miles"
4. Sharman's mission to the Mir Space Station lasted 8 days. She conducted a number of experiments during that time.
→ Sharman's mission to the Mir Space Station lasted 8 days when she conducted a number of experiments.
5. The speech announced that NASA was developing a reusable launch vehicle – the space shuttle. The speech was made by U.S President Richard Nixon in 1972.
→ The speech which was made by U.S President Richard Nixon in 1972 announced that NASA was developing a reusable launch vehicle – the space shuttle.
6. We are meeting an astronomer tonight. This astronomer has discovered three Earth-like planets.
→ The astronomer who/ whom/ that we are meeting has discovered three Earth-like planets.
7. Dennis Tito became the first space tourist in 2001. Anousheh Ansari travelled into space as a tourist in 2006.
→ When Anousheh Ansari travelled into space as a tourist in 2006, Dennis Tito became the first space tourist in 2001
8. I'm reading an article. The article is about NASA's plan to return humans to the moon.
→ I'm reading which/ that is about NASA's plan to return humans to the moon.
9. Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin planted an American flag on the moon. They spoke to President Richard Nixon after that.
→ Before Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin spoke to President Richard Nixon, they had planted an American flag on the moon.
10. Last week they visited a museum. The first artificial satellite is on display there.
→ Last week they visited a museum where the first artificial satellite is on display

XI. Choose the correct option A, B, C or D to complete the sentences :

1. The first _____ was done by Alexei Leonov, a Russian cosmonaut on March 18th, 1965. It was 10 minutes long.
A. spacesuit **B. spacewalk** C. spaceship D. spaceward.
2. The Milky Way is just a _____ in the universe and it contains our Solar System,
A. planet B. comet C. meteorite **D. galaxy**
3. Christa Fuglesang said he enjoyed floating around in the _____ environment.
A. homesick B. heavy **C. weightless** D. quiet
4. NASA is now working hard to _____ whether there is life on Mars.
A. **discover** B. collect C. experience D. accept

5. The closest potentially _____ planet ever found has been spotted by Australian scientists, and it's just 14 light-years away.
A. foreseeable **B. habitable** C. transferable D. workable
6. As soon as the spacecraft _____ into space, the crew started to observe the sun.
A. travelled B. was travelling C. has travelled **D. had travelled**
7. The launch of the Space Shuttle Endeavour _____ broadcast live this morning.
A. **was** B. had been C. has been D. was being
8. Do you want to meet my colleague _____ son is training to be an astronaut ?
A. that B. whom **C. who** D. x
9. The mission _____ they are talking about plans to send humans to Mars by 2030.
A. who B. when C. where **D. x**
10. The Astronauts Memorial Foundation honours all American astronauts _____ have lost their lives while on mission or in training.
A. which **B. who** C. whom D. x

XII. Fill in the blank with a suitable word to complete the following passage :

Space Exploration is the investigation of the universe beyond Earth's atmosphere by (1) _____ of manned or unmanned spacecraft. Despite the technological advancements achieved in the past, space exploration was only (2) _____ until the 20th century. The first successful orbital launch was made by the Soviet Union 1957 which was called "Sputnik". When the topic "SPACE OPERATION" is put (3) _____ the table, a question has often been asked: "Why should we spend money on NASA while there are so (4) _____ problems here on Earth?". However, this might be partially wrong exploring the unknown may help us progress.

The advantages of space exploration include the materials (5) _____ can be obtained from outer space. For instance, asteroids have iron and nickel which could be utilized to satisfy the (6) _____ for metal. Therefore, numerous commercial companies have invested in developing technology for asteroid mining. Several comets and asteroid (7) _____ solid water in them. This water can be used for astronauts and scientists in space stations. The water can also be broken down to hydrogen which can be used as (8) _____ for the rockets. Scientists also believed that dinosaurs disappeared because they couldn't go to (9) _____ planet. Sooner or later a killer comet will again cross Earth's path , threatening all life. Fortunately, (10) _____ we have knowledge about comets and space science, we will be able to survive.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. means | 6. demand/ need |
| 2. possible | 7. carry |
| 3. on | 8. fuel |
| 4. many | 9. another |
| 5. that/ which | 10. because |

XIII. Read the following passage and choose the best answer for each question:

Where will you go on your next vacation? Disneyland? Sea World? Outer space?

That's right; tourists are now paying big bucks to travel into space with astronauts! The first space tourist was Dennis Tito, an American businessman. In 2001, he paid about \$20 million to ride on a Russian rocket to the International Space Station. The Space Station circles 220 miles above Earth. Tito stayed on the station for a week, hanging out with astronauts and eating space food.

The latest space tourist was Anousheh Ansari, an Iranian-born woman from the United States who went to the Space Station in mid-September 2006.

How safe is space travel? Apart from the risk of crashing, space tourists have some special things to worry about. Earth's atmosphere protects us from dangerous radiation from the sun. Space travelers are exposed to more of the sun's rays. But for tourists spending only a few days or weeks in space, the radiation probably isn't harmful.

A bigger problem might be space sickness. Without Earth's gravity to hold them down, visitors to the Space Station float around inside the craft. It may look like fun on TV, but it can make first-time space travelers dizzy and sick. Luckily, the sickness usually wears off quickly. Then space tourists can enjoy their trip - and the amazing view of Earth.

1. Traveling to space _____

- A. will be available to everyone B. is not expensive
C. will be limited to the very wealthy D. will be limited to the very poor

2. While in outer space, it's likely that people will _____

- A. **experience space sickness** B. not need spacesuits
C. will get a sunburn D. make side trips to Mars

3. It is probably so expensive to travel to space because _____

- A. astronauts want to make a lot of money B. astronaut food is very expensive
C. space equipment and fuel is expensive D. there are high taxes on space travel 4.

This passage is _____

- A. a poem B. fiction C. a biography **D. a non-fiction**

5. Why are space travellers exposed to more radiation?

- A. Their spacesuits are too thin to protect them
B. They lack protection provided by Earth's atmosphere.
C. They stay in the space for such a long time.
D. The float around inside the craft and have space sickness.

XIV. Use the ideas below to write a paragraph of around 100 words about the benefits of space exploration:

- Might find new minerals, precious materials sometimes → make our lives easier
- Bring smart people work together → result in fantastic scientific discoveries, useful inventions
- Colonise other planets, make atmosphere suitable for human life

People have spent a lot of money on space travel because it brings us many benefits. First of all, through space missions, we might find new minerals and precious materials on other planets that could make our lives much easier. Secondly, space exploration brings together a lot of smart people from many different fields to work on the same problem. This has resulted in not only fantastic scientific discoveries but also many useful inventions. Thirdly, as our Earth is becoming overpopulated, we might be able to colonise other planets such as Mars and make their atmosphere suitable for human life. In conclusion, people are continuing exploring space because of its advantages. (111 words)

Eng 9 Unit 11. CHANGING ROLES IN SOCIETY

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>application</i> (n)	/ˌæplɪˈkeɪʃn/	việc áp dụng, ứng dụng	<i>male-dominated</i> (adj)	/meɪl-ˈdɒmɪneɪtɪd/	do nam giới áp đảo
<i>apply</i> (v)	/əˈplaɪ/	dùng			
<i>attendance</i> (n)	/əˈtendəns/	sự tham gia	<i>real-life</i> (adj)	/riːl-laɪf/	cuộc sống thực
<i>attend</i> (v)	/əˈtend/	tham gia			
<i>breadwinner</i> (n)	/ˈbredwɪnə(r)/	trụ cột gia đình	<i>responsive</i> (to) (adj)	/rɪˈspɒnsɪv/	phản ứng nhanh nhạy
<i>burden</i> (n)	/ˈbɜːdn/	gánh nặng	<i>role</i> (n)	/rəʊl/	vai trò
<i>burdensome</i> (a)	/ˈbɜː(r)d(ə)ns(ə)m/	phiền toái			
<i>consequently</i> (adj)	/ˈkɒnsɪkwəntli/	vì vậy	<i>sector</i> (n)	/ˈsektə(r)/	mảng, lĩnh vực
<i>content</i> (adj)	/kənˈtent/	hài lòng	<i>sense</i> (of) (n)	/sens/	tính
<i>externally</i> (v)	/ɪkˈstɜːnəli/	bên ngoài	<i>sole</i> (adj)	/səʊl/	độc nhất
<i>facilitate</i> (v)	/fəˈsɪlɪteɪt/	tạo điều kiện dễ dàng; điều phối	<i>tailor</i> (v)	/ˈteɪlə(r)/	biến đổi theo nhu cầu
<i>facilitation</i> (n)					
<i>financial</i> (adj)	/faɪˈnænʃl/	(thuộc về) tài	<i>virtual</i> (adj)	/ˈvɜːtʃuəl/	ảo
<i>finance</i> (n)	/ˈfaɪnæns/	chính			
<i>hands-on</i> (adj)	/hændz-ɒn/	thực hành, thực tế, ngay tại chỗ	<i>vision</i> (n)	/ˈvɪʒn/	tầm nhìn
<i>individually oriented</i> (adj)	/ˌɪndɪˈvɪdʒuəli ɔːrɪəntɪd/	có xu hướng cá nhân			
<i>leave</i> (n)	/liːv/	nghỉ phép			

II. Grammar:

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Topic:

Changing roles in society Phonetics:

Agreeing and disagreeing tones Grammar:

- Review: Future passive
- Non-defining relative clause

Vocabulary:

The changing roles in society Skills:

- Reading about the changing roles of women in society and its effects

- Listening about the changes that women in Kenya are going through
- Talking and writing about roles in the future

PRACTICE

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

1. A. forum B. machine C. pressure D. whiteboard
2. A. projector B. dependent C. dominate D. appointment
3. A. relationship B. participate C. curriculum D. academic
4. A. demolish B. syllabus C. principal D. masterpiece
5. A. theoretical B. international C. uneconomic D. university
6. A. developer B. responsible C. participate D. individual
7. A. dramatically B. relation C. drastically D. advantage
8. A. consequently B. externally C. financially D. facilitate
9. A. economic B. academic C. competition D. technology

Choose a word whose underline part is pronounced differently from the rest

1. A. financial B. responsive C. applicant D. breadwinner
2. A. burden B. curtain C. turtle D. curriculum
3. A. discussion B. provision C. permission D. cushion
4. A. evaluation B. facilitator C. guidance D. female
5. A. responsive B. sector C. sense D. content
6. A. housework B. vision C. hospital D. classroom

II. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only.

apply	breadwinner	burden	content	evaluator
Hands-on	process	provider	responsibility	tailor

1. In our society, men are often expected to be the_____ in a family.
2. His work was reviewed by the_____ and he was given a list of corrections that he should apply to meet corporate standards.
3. In order to help students learn the sense of _____, it's necessary for them to do household work after school.
4. If you need to contact your internet service_____, you can find their contact details on your bills.
5. Many employers consider_____ experience to be as useful as academic qualifications.
6. With the modern training strategy, we identify your needs, and_____ your training accordingly.
7. He can speak English, French and Japanese. He wants a job in which he can_____ his foreign languages.
8. Paying tuition fees often places a large financial_____ on poor student's families.
9. Mary is very_____ with her current job and has no desire to quit it.
10. Teenagers play an important part in the_____ of changing the society.

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

3. Some of the boys didn't come.
 A. whom I invited them B. I invited them
 C. I invited D. when I invited
4. The restaurant.....Bob recommend was too expensive.
 A. which it B. that C. where D. what
5. Mexico City,is the capital of Mexico, is a cosmopolitan city.
 A. which B. that C. where D. what
6. We went to different places.....you find people.....language was hard to understand.
 A. where-which B. where/whose C. that/whose D. which/whose
7. We came within sight of Everest,has attracted so many climbers.
 A. the summit of which B. which the summit
 C. whose summit of D. of which the summit
8. I read about the child.....life was saved by her pet dog.
 A. whom B. who C. her D. whose
9. The police have to try to catch the men.....drive dangerously.
 A. who B. whom C. they D. which
10. There was a small room into.....we all crowded.
 A. which B. where C. that D. it
11. Women have been given.....economic and political rights, as well as the right to choose their own husband.
 A. same B. alike C. equal D. able
12. Teachers in modern classrooms are.....because their main task is to set goals and organize the learning process accordingly.
 A. decision-makers B. facilitators C. facilities D. directors
13. Although he did his best, he had to be.....with third place in the competition.
 A. content B. pleasant C. pleasing D. satisfying
14. The traditional role of a husband is aof safety and security.
 A. deliveryman B. supporter C. supply D. provider
15. Companies have to be to customer demand.
 A. responsible B. responsive C. responding D. responsively
16. Mr. Nam is the teacher inwe have much confidence.
 A. whom B. him C. that D. which
17. Albert Einstein, was such a brilliant scientist, introduced the theory of relativity.
 A. who B. whom C. that D. whose
18. He showed the house.....he was born and grew up.
 A. which B. in which C. in where D. in that
19. The threat of terrorism.....soon.
 A. will remove B. will be removed C. will be finished D. will finish
20. The national debt.....in the near future.
 A. will pay B. will be paid C. will pay off D. will be paid off
21. A workshop can give children with.....experience with computers.
 A. skillful B. handy C. practicing D. hands-on
22. He's still.....dependent on his parents, he regularly receives money to live from them.
 A. finance B. financial C. financially D. financier

23. Some.....at an actual school, not a virtual one, will be required to help students develop appropriate social skills.
A. attendant B. attendance C. attention D. attendee
24. Before the rise of Islam in the early 600s, Arabs lived in a traditional,..... Society; men regarded women as their property.
A. women-dominated B. female-dominated
C. man-dominated D. male-dominated
25. The sushi chef had to spend a few minutes.....one of his orders to fit the dietary needs of his customers.
A. tailor B. tailored C. tailoring D. to tailor
26. The United Nations, was established in 1945, has over 200 members.
A. what B. it C. which D. that
27. The Centre for Education Promotion and Empowerment for Women, was established years ago, has worked to gain equality for women.
A. which B. what C. that D. it
28. The people about.....the novelist wrote were factory workers and their families.
A. who B. whom C. that D. them
29. The living standards of people in remote areas.....
A. will raise B. will be raised C. will be risen D. will arise 30.
The system of water pipes has broken. The supply.....
A. will reduce B. will be reduced C. will have reduced D. will be reducing

VI. Combine the following sentences using an appropriate relative clause.

1. My head teacher has such a good sense of humour. He usually makes everyone laugh by telling funny stories.

2. I prefer traditional classroom. I can interact face to face with the teachers and other students there.

3. We are going to open a new English class. This class is totally online.

4. Mr. Vinh is talking with the students. They are sharing their thoughts about the roles of schools in the future.

5. My new school is bigger than the old one. You visited it two days ago.

6. Dr. Anna Bennett is a senior lecture at the National University. Her paper is about women's roles in the 21st century.

7. My brother has just graduated from Harvard University. Mark Zuckerberg, Facebook founder and CEO used to study there.

8. Her husband will stay at home to look after the children. He used to be the breadwinner of her family.

9. I have read an article about Silicon Valley. It is home to many of the world's largest high-tech corporations.

10. They will organize a farewell party for Ms. Jennifer Green next week. She has been our school principal for 8 years.

VI. Choose the best answer for each numbered blank.

There has been a big change in the roles of men and women at home which in turn (1) Their feelings about their roles. However, it is important to highlight how this distribution of tasks and responsibilities can affect the relationships (2) may end up in discords, or even divorces. In order to make a distinction between the past and the present times (3) are provided: in the past, 75% of women with a part-time job cooked the evening meal regularly while 95% (4) Care of all the washing and ironing. Husbands were involved in cleaning in only 17% and used their time at home on (5) repairs. The care of children was mainly a task carried out by women. The little time that men spent with children usually (6) the more enjoyable aspects of child care such as play and outings. However, this has (7) because now women are the ones who spend less time at home (8) to their jobs or their different activities. And nowadays, most husbands stay at home taking care of children and (9) the cooking. As a consequence of the change in roles, women have become more liberal and think they can manage (10) their own. Men, on the other hand, feel that their position and power in the family has been replaced by women.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. develops | B. creates | C. affects | D. causes |
| 2. A. which | B. who | C. where | D. when |
| 3. A. achievements | B. percentages | C. experiences | D. advantages |
| 4. A. thought | B. played | C. shared | D. took |
| 5. A. commercial | B. industrial | C. household | D. academic |
| 6. A. challenged | B. attracted | C. employed | D. involved |
| 7. A. changed | B. increased | C. guided | D. witnessed |
| 8. A. because | B. despite | C. due | D. but |
| 9. A. making | B. doing | C. getting | D. working |
| 10. A. at | B. of | C. on | D. in |

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best answer for each question. Do

you ever think about what schools will be like in the future? Many people think that students will study most regular classes such as maths, science and history online. Students will probably be able to study these subjects anywhere using a computer. What will happen if students have problems with a subject? They might connect with a teacher through live videoconferencing. Expert teachers from learning centres will give students help wherever they live.

Students will still take classes in a school, too. Schools will become places for learning social skills. Teachers will guide students in learning how to work together in getting along with each other. They will help students with group projects both in and out of the classroom.

Volunteer work and working at local businesses will teach students important life skills about the world they live in. This will help students become an important part of their communities.

Some experts say it will take five years for changes to begin in schools. Some say it will take longer. Most people agree, though, that computers will change education like the way TVs and telephones changed life for people all over the world years before.

1. What will happen if students meet difficulties with a subject?

- A. teachers from learning centres will give them help through live videoconferencing.
- B. They will meet their teachers in person for help with problems with the subject.
- C. They will telephone the teachers who are staying at the school to seek their help.
- D. Schools will organize a live videoconference for teachers to help students with problems.

2. Students will still go to school

- A. learn all subjects
- B. play with their friends
- C. use computers
- D. learn social skills

3. The main role of teachers in the future will be..... A
providing students with knowledge

- B. guiding students to learn computers
- C. helping students with group projects
- D. organizing live videoconferences

4. Students will learn important life skills through.....

- A. going to school every day
- B. taking online classes
- C. working in international businesses
- D. doing volunteer work

5. What is the main idea of the passage?

- A. Kids won't have to go to school in the future
- B. Computers will change education in the future
- C. All classes will be taught online in the future
- D. Teachers will help students from home in the future

VIII. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.

1. This is our new (A) laboratory, that (B) has been equipped (C) with many modern (D) facilities.

2. In the future (A) classrooms, exercise (B) books will replace (C) by laptop computers. (D)

3. Dr. Nelson, whom (A) is the head of (B) the research group, will talk (C) about the changes (D) in curriculum.

4. Students will be guided (A) in learning (B) how to get along (C) with each other. (D)

5. Can we meet each other (A) at my university, where (B) is situated (C) in the city centre? (D)

IX. Rewriting

1. My school is over 100 years old. **which**

I'm studying over 100 years old.

2. Students will share their thoughts about the dream school on the forum. **on** Students' thoughts about the dream schoolthe forum.

3. Ms. Kelly, our school principal, will attend our class this afternoon. **is**

Ms. Kelly,, will attend our class this afternoon.

4. Homework will be sent through cyberspace. **through**

Students.....cyberspace.

5. The teacher meeting you yesterday is supervising our project. **who** The teacher.....is supervising our project.

X. Writing.

Write a paragraph of around 100 words about the role of teachers in the future.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

KEY Eng 9 Unit 11. CHANGING ROLES IN SOCIETY

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Topic:

Changing roles in society Phonetics:

Agreeing and disagreeing tones Grammar:

- Review: Future passive
- Non-defining relative clause

Vocabulary:

The changing roles in society Skills:

- Reading about the changing roles of women in society and its effects
- Listening about the changes that women in Kenya are going through
- Talking and writing about roles in the future

PRACTICE

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. forum | B. machine | C. pressure | D. whiteboard |
| 2. A. projector | B. dependent | C. dominate | D. appointment |
| 3. A. relationship | B. participate | C. curriculum | D. academic |
| 4. A. demolish | B. syllabus | C. principal | D. masterpiece |
| 5. A. theoretical | B. international | C. uneconomic | D. university |
| 6. A. developer | B. responsible | C. participate | D. individual |
| 7. A. dramatically | B. relation | C. drastically | D. advantage |
| 8. A. consequently | B. externally | C. financially | D. facilitate |
| 9. A. economic | B. academic | C. competition | D. technology |

Choose a word whose underline part is pronounced differently from the rest

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>fi</u> ncial | B. respons <u>i</u> ve | C. <u>ap</u> plicant | D. breadw <u>i</u> nn <u>er</u> |
| 2. A. <u>bu</u> rden | B. <u>cu</u> rtain | C. <u>t</u> urtle | D. <u>cu</u> rriculum |
| 3. A. disc <u>u</u> ssion | B. <u>pr</u> ov <u>i</u> sion | C. perm <u>i</u> ssion | D. <u>c</u> ush <u>i</u> on |
| 4. A. eval <u>u</u> ation | B. facilit <u>a</u> tor | C. <u>g</u> uid <u>a</u> nce | D. fem <u>a</u> le |
| 5. A. <u>r</u> espons <u>i</u> ve | B. <u>s</u> ector | C. <u>s</u> ense | D. cont <u>e</u> nt |

6. A. housework

B. vision

C. hospital

D. classroom

II. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only.

apply	breadwinner	burden	content	evaluator
Hands-on	process	provider	responsibility	tailor

1. In our society, men are often expected to be the _____ in a family. **breadwinner**
2. His work was reviewed by the _____ and he was given a list of corrections that he should apply to meet corporate standards. **evaluator**

3. In order to help students learn the sense of _____, it's necessary for them to do household work after school. **responsibility**

4. If you need to contact your internet service _____, you can find their contact details on your bills. **provider**

5. Many employers consider _____ experience to be as useful as academic qualifications. **Hands-on**

6. With the modern training strategy, we identify your needs, and _____ your training accordingly. **tailor**

7. He can speak English, French and Japanese. He wants a job in which he can _____ his foreign languages. **apply**
8. Paying tuition fees often places a large financial _____ on poor student's families.

burden

9. Mary is very _____ with her current job and has no desire to quit it. **content**

10. Teenagers play an important part in the _____ of changing the society. **process**

III. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

1. A leg injury is preventing Peter from active _____ in the competition.	PARTICIPATE - participation
2. Her children are very _____. They do all the shopping and cooking by themselves.	DEPEND - independent
3. In the future, students will not _____ go to school every day; they can stay at home and follow the lesson online.	NECESSARY - necessarily
4. The modern mother will decrease her _____ in household work as it will be shared by her husband.	INVOLVE - involvement
5. Teachers should act as _____, enabling their students to study in the way that suits them best.	FACILITATE - facilitators
6. Our school will participate in a big campaign to save _____ species.	DANGER - endangered
7. The role of modern teacher is to provide _____ to student.	GUIDE - guidance
8. It is good news that all the schools in our city are _____ to changes in the curriculum.	RESPOND - responsive
9. Finishing high school at the age of 16 is _____ possible for many students.	THEORY - theoretically
10. It is announced that successful _____ will receive notification within the week.	APPLY - applicants

IV. Put the following sentences into passive voice.

1. We will open more forums for students to share their ideas.

1.

More forums will be opened for students to share their ideas.

2. Students will no longer carry school bags to the classes.

2.

School bags will no longer be carried to the classes by students.

3. Will schools provide students with laptops or iPads?

3. Will students be provided with laptops or Ipads?/ Will laptops or Ipads be provided for students? 4. They will recognize and value women's contribution equally.

4. Women's contribution will be recognized and valued equally.

5. Teachers will not check student's homework from home.

5. Students' homework will not be checked every day by teachers.

6. Virtual schools will allow students to work from home.

6.

Students will be allowed to work from home by virtual schools.

7. Will he look after the children and feed them?

7.

Will the children be looked after and fed?

8. Women will not do all the washing-up and cooking.

8.

All the washing-up and cooking will not be done by women.

9. Students will log into their accounts to take part in online lessons.

9. Students' accounts will be logged into to take part in online lessons.

10. Our school will use a special software to track student progress.

10. A special software system will be used to track student process by our school.

V. Multiple choice

1. The Taj Mahal, is recognized as one of the wonders of the world, was built by an Indian King in memory of his beloved wife.

A. **which** B. that C. where D. what

2. Louis Paster, discovered a cure for rabies, was a French scientist.

A. he B. that C. **who** D. whom

3. Some of the boys didn't come.

A. whom I invited them B. I invited them
C. I **invited** D. when I invited

4. The restaurant.....Bob recommend was too expensive.

A. which it B. **that** C. where D. what

5. Mexico City,is the capital of Mexico, is a cosmopolitan city.

A. **which** B. that C. where D. what

6. We went to different places.....you find people.....language was hard to understand.

A. where-which B. **where/whose** C. that/whose D. which/whose

7. We came within sight of Everest,has attracted so many climbers.
 A. **the summit of which** B. which the summit
 C. whose summit of D. of which the summit
8. I read about the child.....life was saved by her pet dog.
 A. whom B. who C. her D. **whose**
9. The police have to try to catch the men.....drive dangerously.
 A. **who** B. whom C. they D. which
10. There was a small room into.....we all crowded.
 A. **which** B. where C. that D. it
11. Women have been given.....economic and political rights, as well as the right to choose their own husband.
 A. same B. alike C. **equal** D. able
12. Teachers in modern classrooms are.....because their main task is to set goals and organize the learning process accordingly.
 A. decision-makers B. **facilitators** C. facilities D. directors
13. Although he did his best, he had to be.....with third place in the competition.
 A. **content** B. pleasant C. pleasing D. satisfying
14. The traditional role of a husband is aof safety and security.
 A. deliveryman B. supporter C. supply D. **provider**
15. Companies have to be to customer demand.
 A. responsible B. **responsive** C. responding D. responsively
16. Mr. Nam is the teacher inwe have much confidence.
 A. **whom** B. him C. that D. which
17. Albert Eistein, was such a brilliant scientist, introduced the theory of relativity.
 A. **who** B. whom C. that D. whose
18. He showed the house.....he was born and grew up.
 A. which B. **in which** C. in where D. in that
19. The threat of terrorism.....soon.
 A. will remove B. **will be removed** C. will be finished D. will finish
20. The national debt.....in the near future.
 A. will pay B. will be paid C. will pay off D. **will be paid off**
21. A workshop can give children with.....experience with computers.
 A. skillful B. handy C. practicing D. **hands-on**
22. He's still.....dependent on his parents, he regularly receives money to live from them.
 A. finance B. financial C. **financially** D. financier
23. Some.....at an actual school, not a virtual one, will be required to help students develop appropriate social skills.
 A. attendant B. **attendance** C. attention D. attendee
24. Before the rise of Islam in the early 600s, Arabs lived in a traditional,.....Society; men regarded women as their property.
 A. women-dominated B. female-dominated
 C. man-dominated D. **male-dominated**
25. The sushi chef had to spend a few minutes.....one of his orders to fit the dietary needs of his customers.
 A. tailor B. tailored C. **tailoring** D. to tailor
26. The United Nations, was established in 1945, has over 200 members.

- A. what B. it C. **which** D. that
27. The Centre for Education Promotion and Empowerment for Women, was established years ago, has worked to gain equality for women.
- A. **which** B. what C. that D. it
28. The people about.....the novelist wrote were factory workers and their families.
- A. who B. **whom** C. that D. them
29. The living standards of people in remote areas.....
- A. will raise B. **will be raised** C. will be risen D. will arise
30. The system of water pipes has broken. The supply.....
- A. will reduce B. **will be reduced** C. will have reduced D. will be reducing

Combine the following sentences using an appropriate relative clause.

1. My head teacher has such a good sense of humour. He usually makes everyone laugh by telling funny stories.

1. My head teacher, who usually makes everyone laugh by telling funny stories, has such a good sense of humour.

2. I prefer traditional classroom. I can interact face to face with the teachers and other students there.

2. I prefer traditional classroom where I can interact face to face with the teachers and other students.

3. We are going to open a new English class. This class is totally online.

3. We are going to open a new English class which/ that is totally online.

4. Mr. Vinh is talking with the students. They are sharing their thoughts about the roles of schools in the future.

4. Mr. Vinh is talking with the students who/ that are sharing their thoughts about the roles of schools in the future.

5. My new school is bigger than the old one. You visited it two days ago.

5. My new school, which you visited it two days ago, is bigger than the old one.

6. Dr. Anna Bennett is a senior lecture at the National University. Her paper is about women's roles in the 21st century.

6. Dr. Anna Bennett, whose paper is about women's roles in the 21st century, is a senior lecture at the National University.

7. My brother has just graduated from Harvard University. Mark Zuckerberg, Facebook founder and CEO used to study there.

7. My brother has just graduated from Harvard University, where Mark Zuckerberg, Facebook founder and CEO used to study.

8. Her husband will stay at home to look after the children. He used to be the breadwinner of her family.

8. Her husband, who used to be the breadwinner of her family, will stay at home to look after the children.

9. I have read an article about Silicon Valley. It is home to many of the world's largest high-tech corporations.

9. I have read an article about Silicon Valley, which is home to many of the world's largest high-tech corporations.

10. They will organize a farewell party for Ms. Jennifer Green next week. She has been our school principal for 8 years.

10. Next week, they will organize a farewell party for Ms. Jennifer Green, who has been our school principal for 8 years.

VI. Choose the best answer for each numbered blank.

There has been a big change in the roles of men and women at home which in turn (1) Their feelings about their roles. However, it is important to highlight how this distribution of tasks and responsibilities can affect the relationships (2) may end up in discords, or even divorces. In order to make a distinction between the past and the present times (3) are provided: in the past, 75% of women with a part-time job cooked the evening meal regularly while 95% (4) Care of all the washing and ironing. Husbands were involved in cleaning in only 17% and used their time at home on (5) repairs. The care of children was mainly a task carried out by women. The little time that men spent with children usually (6) the more enjoyable aspects of child care such as play and outings. However, this has (7) because now women are the ones who spend less time at home (8) to their jobs or their different activities. And nowadays, most husbands stay at home taking care of children and (9) the cooking. As a consequence of the change in roles, women have become more liberal and think they can manage (10) their own. Men, on the other hand, feel that their position and power in the family has been replaced by women.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. develops | B. creates | C. affects | D. causes |
| 2. A. which | B. who | C. where | D. when |
| 3. A. achievements | B. percentages | C. experiences | D. advantages |
| 4. A. thought | B. played | C. shared | D. took |
| 5. A. commercial | B. industrial | C. household | D. academic |
| 6. A. challenged | B. attracted | C. employed | D. involved |
| 7. A. changed | B. increased | C. guided | D. witnessed |
| 8. A. because | B. despite | C. due | D. but |
| 9. A. making | B. doing | C. getting | D. working |
| 10. A. at | B. of | C. on | D. in |

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best answer for each question.

Do you ever think about what schools will be like in the future? Many people think that students will study most regular classes such as maths, science and history online. Students will probably be able to study these subjects anywhere using a computer. What will happen if students have problems with a subject? They might connect with a teacher through live videoconferencing. Expert teachers from learning centres will give students help wherever they live.

Students will still take classes in a school, too. Schools will become places for learning social skills. Teachers will guide students in learning how to work together in getting along with each other. They will help students with group projects both in and out of the classroom.

Volunteer work and working at local businesses will teach students important life skills about the world they live in. This will help students become an important part of their communities.

Some experts say it will take five years for changes to begin in schools. Some say it will take longer. Most people agree, though, that computers will change education like the way TVs and telephones changed life for people all over the world years before.

1. What will happen if students meet difficulties with a subject?

A. teachers from learning centres will give them help through live videoconferencing.

B. They will meet their teachers in person for help with problems with the subject.

C. They will telephone the teachers who are staying at the school to seek their help. **D.** Schools will organize a live videoconference for teachers to help students with problems.

2. Students will still go to school

A. learn all subjects

B. play with their friends

C. use computers

D. learn social skills

3. The main role of teachers in the future will be..... **A** providing students with knowledge

B. guiding students to learn computers

C. helping students with group projects

D. organizing live videoconferences

4. Students will learn important life skills through.....

A. going to school every day

B. taking online classes

C. working in international businesses

D. doing volunteer work

5. What is the main idea of the passage?

A. Kids won't have to go to school in the future

B. Computers will change education in the future

C. All classes will be taught online in the future

D. Teachers will help students from home in the future

VIII. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.

1. This is our new (A) laboratory, that (B) has been equipped (C) with many modern (D) facilities. **B - which**

2. In the future (A) classrooms, exercise (B) books will replace (C) by laptop computers. (D) **C – will be replaced**

3. Dr. Nelson, whom (A) is the head of (B) the research group, will talk (C) about the changes (D) in curriculum. **A - who**

4. Students will are guided (A) in learning (B) how to get along (C) with each other. (D) **A – will be guided**

5. Can we meet each other (A) at my university, where (B) is situated (C) in the city centre? (D) **B - which**

IX. Rewriting

1. My school is over 100 years old. **which**

I'm studying over 100 years old. **at/in a school which is**

2. Students will share their thoughts about the dream school on the forum. **on**

Students' thoughts about the dream schoolthe forum.

Will be shared on

3. Ms. Kelly, our school principal, will attend our class this afternoon. **is** Ms. Kelly,
....., will attend our class this afternoon.

Who is our school principal

4. Homework will be sent through cyberspace. **through**
Students.....cyberspace.

Will send homework through

5. The teacher meeting you yesterday is supervising our project. **who**
The teacher.....is supervising our project.

Who met you yesterday

X. Writing.

Write a paragraph of around 100 words about the role of teachers in the future.

The role of teachers has changed over time. It is likely that teachers in the future will be more like facilitators, collaborators and team coordinators. Firstly, as facilitators, teachers will help students gain knowledge more easily by discussing problems or giving them advice rather than telling them what to do. Secondly, as collaborators, teachers will work together with students and be involved in students' projects. Thirdly, as coordinators, teachers will organise different activities to ensure student's projects work well. They will also monitor students' progress and assess students' achievements. In conclusion, teachers will not only information providers in the future. They may act as facilitators, collaborators and coordinators. (108 words)